



Ephesians

translationNotes

v6

Copyrights & Licensing

License:

This work is made available under a [Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License](#), which means

You are free:

- Share — copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format
- Adapt — remix, transform, and build upon the material for any purpose, even commercially.

Under the following conditions:

- Attribution — You must attribute the work as follows: “Original work available at <http://unfoldingword.org>.” Attribution statements in derivative works should not in any way suggest that we endorse you or your use of this work.
- ShareAlike — If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same license as the original.

Use of trademarks: **unfoldingWord** is a trademark of Distant Shores Media and may not be included on any derivative works created from this content. Unaltered content from <http://unfoldingword.org> must include the **unfoldingWord** logo when distributed to others. But if you alter the content in any way, you must remove the **unfoldingWord** logo before distributing your work.

This work is still being revised, if you have comments or questions please email them to help@door43.org

Version: 6

Published: 2017-02-22

Table of Contents

Copyrights & Licensing	1
translationNotes	8
Introduction to Ephesians	8
Ephesians 1 General Notes	16
Ephesians 1:1-2	17
Ephesians 1:3-4	19
Ephesians 1:5-6	21
Ephesians 1:7-8	22
Ephesians 1:9-10	23
Ephesians 1:11-12	24
Ephesians 1:13-14	25
Ephesians 1:15-16	26
Ephesians 1:17-18	27
Ephesians 1:19-21	29
Ephesians 1:22-23	31
Ephesians 2 General Notes	32
Ephesians 2:1-3	34
Ephesians 2:4-7	36
Ephesians 2:8-10	38
Ephesians 2:11-12	40
Ephesians 2:13-16	42
Ephesians 2:17-18	44
Ephesians 2:19-22	45
Ephesians 3 General Notes	47
Ephesians 3:1-2	48
Ephesians 3:3-5	49
Ephesians 3:6-7	51
Ephesians 3:8-9	53
Ephesians 3:10-11	55
Ephesians 3:12-13	57
Ephesians 3:14-16	58
Ephesians 3:17-19	59
Ephesians 3:20-21	61
Ephesians 4 General Notes	62
Ephesians 4:1-3	63
Ephesians 4:4-6	65
Ephesians 4:7-8	66
Ephesians 4:9-10	67
Ephesians 4:11-13	68
Ephesians 4:14-16	70
Ephesians 4:17-19	72

Table of Contents

Ephesians 4:20-22	74
Ephesians 4:23-24	76
Ephesians 4:25-27	77
Ephesians 4:28-30	78
Ephesians 4:31-32	79
Ephesians 5 General Notes	80
Ephesians 5:1-2	81
Ephesians 5:3-4	82
Ephesians 5:5-7	83
Ephesians 5:8-12	84
Ephesians 5:13-14	86
Ephesians 5:15-17	88
Ephesians 5:18-21	89
Ephesians 5:22-24	91
Ephesians 5:25-27	92
Ephesians 5:28-30	94
Ephesians 5:31-33	95
Ephesians 6 General Notes	96
Ephesians 6:1-3	97
Ephesians 6:4	98
Ephesians 6:5-8	99
Ephesians 6:9	101
Ephesians 6:10-11	102
Ephesians 6:12-13	103
Ephesians 6:14-16	105
Ephesians 6:17-18	107
Ephesians 6:19-20	109
Ephesians 6:21-22	111
Ephesians 6:23-24	112
translationQuestions	113
Ephesians 1	113
Ephesians 2	115
Ephesians 3	118
Ephesians 4	120
Ephesians 5	122
Ephesians 6	125
translationWords	127
adoption	127
ambassador, representative	128
amen, truly	129
angry, anger	130
apostle, apostleship	131
armor	132

authority	133
baptize, baptism	134
believe, believe in, belief	136
believer	137
beloved	139
blameless	140
bles, blessed, blessing	141
blood	143
boast, boastful	144
body	145
bold, boldly, boldness	146
brother	147
call, calling, called, call out	148
Christ, Messiah	150
church, Church	152
circumcise, circumcision	154
clean, cleanse	155
command, to command, commandment	156
confidence, confident	157
cornerstone	158
covenant	159
create, creation, Creator	161
cross	162
darkness	163
death, die, dead	164
deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive	166
demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit	167
discipline, self-discipline	168
disobey, disobedient, disobedience	169
dominion	170
earth, earthly	171
chosen one, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, the elect	172
enslave, in bondage	173
Ephesus	174
everlasting, eternal, eternity	175
evangelist	176
evil, wicked, wickedness	177
exhort, exhortation	179
faith	180
faithful, faithfulness	182
ancestor, father, forefather	183
flesh	184
fool, foolish, folly	185

forgive, forgiveness	186
sexual immorality	187
generation	188
Gentile	189
gift	190
glory, glorious	191
God	192
God the Father, heavenly Father, Father	194
good, goodness	196
good news, gospel	198
grace, gracious	200
head	201
heart	203
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly	204
heir	205
holy, holiness	206
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord	207
honor, to honor	209
humble, humility	210
idol, idolatrous	211
in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him	212
inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir	213
Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel	215
Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus	216
kingdom	218
know, knowledge, make known	220
law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh	221
life, live, living, alive	223
light	225
lord, master, sir	226
Lord	227
love	228
mercy, merciful	230
mighty, might	232
mind	233
mystery, hidden truth	234
name	235
neighbor	236
obey, obedient, obedience	237
pastor	238
Paul, Saul	239
peace, peaceful	241
persevere, perseverance	242

power, powers	243
praise	244
pray, prayer	245
predestine, predestined	246
prison, prisoner, imprison	247
proclaim, proclamation	248
promise	249
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess	250
psalm	252
raise, rise, risen, arise, arose	253
reconcile, reconciliation	255
redeem, redemption, redeemer	256
reveal, revelation	257
reward	258
righteous, righteousness	259
right hand	260
ruler, rulers, rule	261
sacrifice, offering	262
salvation	264
Satan, devil, evil one	265
save, safe	267
Savior	269
servant, slave, slavery	270
serve, service	272
set apart	273
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning	274
Son of God, the Son, Son	276
spirit, spiritual	278
suffer, suffering	280
sword	281
teacher, Teacher	282
temple	283
trespass	285
true, truth, come true	286
unbeliever, unbelief	288
uncircumcised, uncircumcision	289
understand, understanding	290
walk	291
will of God	292
wine, wineskin, new wine	293
wise, wisdom	294
word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture	295
word of truth	297

Table of Contents

works, deeds, work, acts	298
world, worldly	299
wrath, fury	300
translationAcademy	301
Abstract Nouns	301
Active or Passive	304
Apostrophe	307
Double Negatives	309
Doublet	312
Euphemism	314
Exclusive “We”	316
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information	318
Hyperbole	320
Idiom	323
Inclusive “We”	325
Irony	327
Litotes	330
Merism	332
Metaphor	334
Metonymy	339
Parallelism	341
Personification	343
Simile	345
Synecdoche	348
Forms of You	350
Translating Son and Father	351
How to Translate Names	353
Textual Variants	357
Translate Unknowns	360

translationNotes

Introduction to Ephesians

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of the Book of Ephesians

1. Greeting and prayer for the spiritual blessings in Christ (1:1-23)
2. Sin and salvation (2:1-10)
3. Unity and peace (2:11-22)
4. Mystery of Christ in you, made known (3:1-13)
5. Prayer for riches of his glory to make them strong (3:14-21)
6. Unity of the Spirit, building up the Body of Christ (4:1-16)
7. New life (4:17-32)
8. Imitators of God (5:1-21)
9. Wives and husbands; children and parents; slaves and masters (5:22-6:9)
10. Armor of God (6:10-20)
11. Final greeting (6:21-24)

What is the Book of Ephesians about?

Paul wrote this letter to the Christians in Ephesus in order to encourage them. He wanted to explain to them God's love for them in Christ Jesus. He also wanted to describe the relationship of love and trust that they now had with God, and the blessings that God was giving them because they were now united with Christ. Some of these blessings were the love and unity that God gave them to have with each other.

How should the title of this book be translated?

Translators may choose to call this book by its traditional title, "Ephesians," or "Paul's Letter to the Church in Ephesus," or "A Letter to the Christians in Ephesus." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

What was Paul's relationship to the church in Ephesus?

The Apostle Paul helped to establish the church in Ephesus earlier in his ministry. He also lived in Ephesus for a year and a half and helped the church during this time.

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

What was the "hidden truth" that Paul mentions in the Book of Ephesians?

Paul uses six times the expression translated in the ULB as "hidden truth." By it Paul always means something that is very important, but that God had to reveal to human beings, because they could

not know on their own. It always refers to something about God's plan of salvation: either his plan to bring unity to mankind through Christ, or his plan to bring mankind to himself. Sometimes he means by it the fact that the Gentiles are now able to benefit from the promises of Christ as equals with the Jews.

What is the relationship between salvation and righteous living?

This is a major theme of this letter and many of Paul's letters in general. Christians have been shown great grace by God because they have placed their faith in Jesus. After they come to know God, their righteous living demonstrates faith in Christ instead of obedience to the Law of Moses. (See: [righteous](#), [righteousness](#) and [law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh](#))

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

Singular and plural "you"

In this book, the word "I" refers to Paul. Also, the word "you" is almost always plural and refers to the believers who may read this letter. The three exceptions to this are: 5:14, 6:2 and 6:3. (See: [Exclusive "We"](#) and [Forms of You](#))

What does Paul mean by the "new self" or the "new man"?

Paul means to say that a believer in Christ is given a new nature by the Holy Spirit, God's nature (see 4:24). This is similar to God's action in bringing Jews and non-Jews together and so creating a new people, a people belonging to himself (see 2:15).

How are the ideas of "holy" and "sanctify" represented in Ephesians ULB?

The scriptures use such words to indicate any one of various ideas. For this reason, it is often difficult for translators to represent them well in their versions. In translating into English, Ephesians ULB uses the following principles:

- Sometimes the context mainly implies moral holiness. Especially important for understanding the gospel is the use of "hagios" to express the fact that God views Christians as sinless because they are united to Jesus Christ. Another use of "hagios" is also to express the idea that God is perfect and faultless. A third use is to express the idea that Christians are to conduct themselves in a blameless, faultless manner in life. In these cases, the ULB uses "holy," "holy God," "holy ones," or "holy people." (See 3:5)
- Sometimes the context mainly indicates a simple reference to Christians without implying any particular role filled by them. In these cases, the ULB uses "believer" or "believers." (See 4:12; 5:3; 6:18)
- Sometimes the context mainly implies the idea of someone or something set apart for God alone. In these cases, the ULB uses "set apart," "dedicated to," or "reserved for." (See 1:1; 3:5)

As translators think about how to represent these ideas in their own versions, they will often be helped by the choices made in the ULB.

What does Paul mean by the expression “in Christ,” “in the Lord,” etc.?

This kind of expression occurs in 1:1, 3, 4, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 15, 20; 2:6, 7, 10, 13, 15, 16, 18, 21, 22; 3:5, 6, 9, 11, 12, 21; 4:1, 17, 21, 32; 5:8, 18, 19; 6:1, 10, 18, 21. Paul means to express the idea of very close union with Christ and the believers. Please see the introduction to the Book of Romans for more details about this kind of expression.

What are the major issues in the text of the Book of Ephesians?

The text of some English translations do not agree concerning what to include. This is because of the discovery of manuscripts that many believe are more accurate. The follow are the most significant issues in the Book of Ephesians:

- Some early manuscripts omit “in Ephesus” (1:1) but this expression is probably in the original letter. The ULB, UDB, and many modern versions have it.
- “because we are members of his body.” (5:30) Most modern versions, including the ULB and UDB, read in this way. Some older versions read, “because we are members of his body and of his bones.” Translators might decide to choose the second reading if other versions in their area have it. If translators do choose the second reading, they should put the additional words inside square brackets ([]) to indicate that they are probably not original to the Book of Ephesians. (See: [Textual Variants](#))

List of translationAcademy Topics in Ephesians

- * [Active or Passive](#) is found in: [01:03](#), [01:11](#), [01:17](#), [01:19](#), [02:04](#), [02:08](#), [02:11](#), [02:19](#), [03:03](#), [03:08](#), [03:14](#), [04:04](#), [04:07](#), [04:17](#), [04:20](#), [04:23](#), [06:19](#)
- * [Apostrophe](#) is found in: [05:13](#)
- * [Double Negatives](#) is found in: [05:15](#)
- * [Doublet](#) is found in: [01:03](#), [02:01](#), [03:10](#), [05:25](#), [06:05](#)
- * [Exclusive “We”](#) is found in: [01:11](#), [03:20](#)
- * [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) is found in: [01:07](#), [03:12](#), [03:14](#), [04:11](#), [05:28](#), [06:19](#)
- * [Hyperbole](#) is found in: [06:05](#)
- * [Idiom](#) is found in: [01:17](#), [01:19](#), [04:17](#), [04:25](#), [05:15](#), [06:19](#)
- * [Inclusive “We”](#) is found in: [01:03](#), [01:05](#), [02:17](#)
- * [Irony](#) is found in: [04:20](#)
- * [Litotes](#) is found in: [01:15](#)
- * [Merism](#) is found in: [05:18](#)
- * [Metaphor](#) is found in: [01:01](#), [01:07](#), [01:13](#), [01:17](#), [01:22](#), [02:01](#), [02:04](#), [02:11](#), [02:13](#), [02:19](#), [03:06](#), [03:08](#), [03:10](#), [03:17](#), [04:01](#), [04:04](#), [04:11](#), [04:14](#), [04:17](#), [04:20](#), [04:23](#), [04:28](#), [05:05](#), [05:08](#), [05:13](#), [05:22](#), [05:25](#), [05:28](#), [06:10](#), [06:12](#), [06:14](#), [06:17](#)

- * **Metonymy** is found in: 01:19, 01:22, 02:01, 02:11, 02:13, 03:12, 03:17, 04:17, 05:15, 06:19
- * **Personification** is found in: 05:01
- * **Simile** is found in: 05:01
- * **Synecdoche** is found in: 03:14, 06:12
- * **Forms of You** is found in: 01:01, 05:13, 06:01
- * **Translating Son and Father** is found in: 04:11
- * **How to Translate Names** is found in: 06:21

List of translationWords in Ephesians

- * **adoption** is found in: 01:05
- * **ambassador, representative** is found in: 06:19
- * **amen, truly** is found in: 03:20
- * **angry, anger** is found in: 04:25, 04:31, 06:04
- * **apostle, apostleship** is found in: 01:01, 02:19, 03:03, 04:11
- * **armor** is found in: 06:10, 06:12
- * **authority** is found in: 01:19, 02:01, 03:10, 06:12
- * **baptize, baptism** is found in: 04:04
- * **believe, believe in, belief** is found in: 01:03, 01:13, 01:19
- * **believer** is found in: 03:17, 04:11, 04:14, 05:03, 06:17
- * **beloved** is found in: 01:05, 05:01, 06:21
- * **blameless** is found in: 01:03
- * **bless, blessed, blessing** is found in: 01:03
- * **blood** is found in: 01:07, 02:13, 06:12
- * **boast, boastful** is found in: 02:08
- * **body** is found in: 03:06, 04:04, 04:11, 04:14
- * **bold, boldly, boldness** is found in: 06:19
- * **brother** is found in: 06:21, 06:23
- * **call, calling, called, call out** is found in: 01:17, 04:01, 04:04
- * **Christ, Messiah** is found in: 01:13, 01:19, 01:22, 02:11, 02:13, 02:19, 03:03, 03:06, 03:08, 03:17, 04:11, 04:14, 04:20, 05:13, 05:22, 05:25, 05:28, 05:31, 06:05
- * **church, Church** is found in: 01:22, 03:10, 03:20, 05:22, 05:25, 05:28, 05:31
- * **circumcise, circumcision** is found in: 02:11

- * **clean, cleanse** is found in: 05:25
- * **command, to command, commandment** is found in: 02:13, 06:01
- * **confidence, confident** is found in: 01:11, 04:04
- * **cornerstone** is found in: 02:19
- * **covenant** is found in: 02:11
- * **create, creation, Creator** is found in: 01:03
- * **cross** is found in: 02:13
- * **darkness** is found in: 05:08
- * **death, die, dead** is found in: 02:01, 02:04, 02:13, 05:13, 06:23
- * **deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive** is found in: 04:20
- * **demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit** is found in: 06:12
- * **discipline, self-discipline** is found in: 06:04
- * **disobey, disobedient, disobedience** is found in: 02:01, 05:05
- * **dominion** is found in: 01:19
- * **earth, earthly** is found in: 01:09
- * **chosen one, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, the elect** is found in: 01:03, 01:11
- * **enslave, in bondage** is found in: 04:07
- * **Ephesus** is found in: 01:01
- * **evangelist** is found in: 04:11
- * **evil, wicked, wickedness** is found in: 02:01, 04:31, 05:15, 06:12
- * **exhort, exhortation** is found in: 04:17
- * **faith** is found in: 01:15, 02:08, 03:12, 03:17, 04:04, 04:11, 06:14, 06:23
- * **faithful, faithfulness** is found in: 01:01, 06:21
- * **ancestor, father, forefather** is found in: 06:01, 06:04
- * **flesh** is found in: 02:01, 02:11, 02:13, 05:31, 06:12
- * **fool, foolish, folly** is found in: 05:15
- * **forgive, forgiveness** is found in: 01:07, 04:31
- * **sexual immorality** is found in: 05:03, 05:05
- * **generation** is found in: 03:20
- * **Gentile** is found in: 02:11, 02:19, 03:01, 03:06, 03:08, 04:17
- * **gift** is found in: 02:08, 03:06, 03:08, 04:07

- * glory, glorious is found in: 01:05, 01:11, 01:17, 03:12, 03:14, 03:20, 05:25
- * God is found in: 01:01, 01:17, 01:19, 02:04, 02:08, 02:11, 02:13, 02:19, 03:01, 03:06, 03:08, 03:10, 03:17, 04:04, 04:17, 04:28, 05:01, 06:10, 06:12
- * God the Father, heavenly Father, Father is found in: 01:01, 01:17, 02:17, 03:14, 04:04, 05:18, 06:23
- * good, goodness is found in: 02:08, 05:08
- * good news, gospel is found in: 01:13, 03:06, 03:08, 06:14, 06:19
- * grace, gracious is found in: 01:01, 01:05, 01:07, 02:04, 02:08, 03:06, 06:23
- * head is found in: 01:22
- * heart is found in: 01:17, 03:17, 04:17, 05:18, 06:05, 06:21
- * heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly is found in: 01:03, 01:09, 01:19, 02:04, 03:10, 03:14, 04:09, 06:09, 06:12
- * heir is found in: 03:06
- * holy, holiness is found in: 01:03, 04:23, 05:25
- * Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord is found in: 01:13, 02:17, 03:03, 03:14, 04:01, 04:04, 04:28, 05:18, 06:17
- * honor, to honor is found in: 06:01
- * humble, humility is found in: 04:01
- * idol, idolatrous is found in: 05:05
- * in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him is found in: 01:01, 01:03, 01:09, 01:13, 02:04, 02:08, 02:13, 02:19, 03:06, 03:12
- * inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir is found in: 01:13, 01:17, 05:05
- * Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel is found in: 02:11
- * Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus is found in: 01:01, 01:03, 01:15, 01:17, 02:08, 03:01, 03:06, 03:10, 03:20, 04:20, 05:18, 06:23
- * kingdom is found in: 05:05
- * know, knowledge, make known is found in: 03:03, 04:11, 06:19
- * law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh is found in: 02:13
- * life, live, living, alive is found in: 02:04, 04:17
- * light is found in: 05:08, 05:13
- * lord, master, sir is found in: 06:05, 06:09
- * Lord is found in: 01:01, 01:03, 01:15, 01:17, 03:10, 04:01, 04:04, 04:17, 05:18, 05:22, 06:01, 06:04, 06:05, 06:10, 06:21, 06:23
- * love is found in: 01:15, 02:04, 03:17, 04:14, 05:01, 05:25, 05:28, 06:23

- * **mercy, merciful** is found in: 02:04
- * **mighty, might** is found in: 06:10
- * **mind** is found in: 04:23
- * **mystery, hidden truth** is found in: 01:09, 03:03, 03:08, 05:31, 06:19
- * **name** is found in: 01:19
- * **neighbor** is found in: 04:25
- * **obey, obedient, obedience** is found in: 06:01, 06:05
- * **pastor** is found in: 04:11
- * **Paul, Saul** is found in: 01:01, 03:01
- * **peace, peaceful** is found in: 01:01, 02:13, 04:01, 06:14, 06:23
- * **persevere, perseverance** is found in: 06:17
- * **power, powers** is found in: 01:19, 03:06, 03:14, 03:20
- * **praise** is found in: 01:03, 01:05, 01:11, 05:18
- * **pray, prayer** is found in: 01:15, 06:17, 06:19
- * **predestine, predestined** is found in: 01:05
- * **prison, prisoner, imprison** is found in: 04:01
- * **proclaim, proclamation** is found in: 02:17, 06:14
- * **promise** is found in: 03:06, 06:01
- * **prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess** is found in: 02:19, 03:03, 04:11
- * **psalm** is found in: 05:18
- * **raise, rise, risen, arise, arose** is found in: 01:19
- * **reconcile, reconciliation** is found in: 02:13
- * **redeem, redemption, redeemer** is found in: 01:07, 04:28, 05:15
- * **reveal, revelation** is found in: 01:17, 03:03
- * **reward** is found in: 06:05
- * **righteous, righteousness** is found in: 04:23, 05:08, 06:14
- * **right hand** is found in: 01:19
- * **ruler, rulers, rule** is found in: 01:19, 02:01, 03:10, 06:12
- * **sacrifice, offering** is found in: 05:01
- * **salvation** is found in: 01:13, 06:17
- * **Satan, devil, evil one** is found in: 04:25, 06:10, 06:14

- * **save, safe** is found in: 02:04, 02:08
- * **Savior** is found in: 05:22
- * **servant, slave, slavery** is found in: 03:06, 06:05, 06:09, 06:21
- * **serve, service** is found in: 04:11
- * **set apart** is found in: 01:15, 02:19, 03:08
- * **sin, sinful, sinner, sinning** is found in: 01:07, 02:01, 04:25
- * **Son of God, the Son, Son** is found in: 04:11
- * **spirit, spiritual** is found in: 01:03, 02:01, 04:23, 05:18, 06:12
- * **suffer, suffering** is found in: 03:12
- * **sword** is found in: 06:17
- * **teacher, Teacher** is found in: 04:11
- * **temple** is found in: 02:19
- * **trespass** is found in: 02:01, 02:04
- * **true, truth, come true** is found in: 04:14, 04:20, 04:23, 04:25, 05:08, 06:14
- * **unbeliever, unbelief** is found in: 02:01
- * **uncircumcised, uncircumcision** is found in: 02:11
- * **understand, understanding** is found in: 01:07
- * **walk** is found in: 02:01, 02:08
- * **will of God** is found in: 01:01, 05:15, 06:05
- * **wine, wineskin, new wine** is found in: 05:18
- * **wise, wisdom** is found in: 01:07, 01:17, 03:10, 05:15
- * **word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture** is found in: 04:07, 06:17
- * **word of truth** is found in: 01:13
- * **works, deeds, work, acts** is found in: 02:08, 06:05
- * **world, worldly** is found in: 02:01, 02:11
- * **wrath, fury** is found in: 02:01

Ephesians 1 General Notes

Structure and formatting

“I pray”

This chapter is structured loosely as a prayer, but it is not a typical prayer. This is a unique “prayer” where Paul is not just talking to God. He is also giving written instructions to the church in Ephesus.

Special concepts in this chapter

Predestination

Many scholars believe this chapter teaches on a subject known as “predestination.” This is related to the biblical concept of “predestine” and some scholars take this to indicate that God has chosen some to be eternally saved before the foundation of the world. Since this is a source of theological diversity, extra care should be taken in translation, especially with regards to elements of causation in this chapter. (See: [predestine](#), [predestined](#))

Links:

- [Ephesians 01:01 Notes](#)
- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)

Ephesians 1:1-2

UDB:

¹ I, Paul, write this letter to my dear fellow believers whom God has set apart for himself, and who are loyal to Christ Jesus—I am writing to the fellow believers who are living in the city of Ephesus. I am Paul, whom God chose and whom God sent to you as an apostle of Christ Jesus. ² I pray that God our Father and Jesus Christ our Lord will give you his kindness and peace.

ULB:

1 ¹ Paul, an apostle of Christ Jesus through the will of God, to God's holy people in Ephesus, who are faithful in Christ Jesus.[1]Some early versions omit, *in Ephesus*, but this expression is probably in Paul's original letter. ² Grace to you and peace from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ.

translationWords:

- Paul, Saul
- apostle, apostleship
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- will of God
- God
- Ephesus
- faithful, faithfulness
- in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him
- grace, gracious
- peace, peaceful
- God the Father, heavenly Father, Father
- Lord

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul names himself as the writer of this letter to the believers at the church at Ephesus.
- **General Information:** - Except where noted, all instances of “you” and “your” refers to the Ephesian believers as well as all believers and so are plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))
- **Paul, an apostle ... to God's holy people in Ephesus** - Your language may have a particular way of introducing the author of a letter and its intended audience. AT: “I, Paul, an apostle ... write this letter to you, God's holy people Ephesus”

- **who are faithful in Christ Jesus** - “In Christ Jesus” and similar expressions are metaphors that frequently occur in the New Testament letters. They express the strongest kind of relationship possible between Christ and those who believe in him. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Grace to you and peace** - This is a common greeting and blessing that Paul often uses in his letters.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 01 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 01 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 1:3-4

UDB:

³ Praise God, the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ! He has caused us great joy through every kind of heavenly spiritual blessing that Christ gives to us. ⁴ Before God created the world he chose us to be his people through Christ, who set us apart for God to live blamelessly in his sight.

ULB:

³ May the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ be praised, who has blessed us with every spiritual blessing in the heavenly places in Christ. ⁴ God chose us in him from the beginning of the world, that we may be holy and blameless in his sight.

translationWords:

- Lord
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- praise
- bless, blessed, blessing
- spirit, spiritual
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him
- create, creation, Creator
- chosen one, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, the elect
- believe, believe in, belief
- holy, holiness
- blameless

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul opens his letter by talking about the believers' position and their safety before God.
- **General Information:** - In this book, unless otherwise stated, the words "us" and "we" refer to Paul, the believers in Ephesus, as well as all believers. (See: **Inclusive "We"**)
- **May the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ be praised** - This can be stated in an active form. AT: "Let us praise the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ" (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **who has blessed us** - "for God has blessed us"
- **every spiritual blessing** - "every blessing coming from the Spirit of God"
- **in the heavenly places** - "in the supernatural world." The word "heavenly" refers to the place where God is.

- **in Christ** - “In Christ” and similar expressions are metaphors that frequently occur in the New Testament letters. They express the strongest kind of relationship possible between Christ and those who believe in him.
- **holy and blameless** - Paul uses two similar words to emphasize moral goodness. (See: [Doublet](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 01 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 01 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 1:5-6

UDB:

⁵ Because he loves us, God planned long ago to adopt us as his own children because of what Jesus Christ has done. He planned to adopt us because it pleased him to have us as his children, so he did what he wanted to do. ⁶ Because of this we now praise God for his amazing kindness given to us by his Son whom he loves, kindness that we did not deserve.

ULB:

⁵ God chose us beforehand for adoption as sons through Jesus Christ, according to the good pleasure of his will. ⁶ Our adoption results in the praise of his glorious grace that he has freely given us in the One he loves.

translationWords:

- [predestine, predestined](#)
- [adoption](#)
- [praise](#)
- [glory, glorious](#)
- [grace, gracious](#)
- [beloved](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The words “his,” “He,” and “he” refer to God.
- **God chose us beforehand for adoption** - The word “us” refers to Paul, the Ephesian church, and all believers in Christ. AT: “God planned long ago to adopt us” (UDB) (See: [Inclusive “We”](#))
- **for adoption** - Here “adoption” refers to being placed in God’s family.
- **through Jesus Christ** - God brought believers into his family by the work of Jesus Christ.
- **the One he loves** - “the One he loves, Jesus Christ” or “his Son, whom he loves”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 01 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 01 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 1:7-8

UDB:

⁷ Jesus has freed us as if he purchased us out of a slave market. He freed us by his death; that is, God has forgiven us of our sins, because he has been very, very kind to us. ⁸ He has been very kind to us, and he has given us every kind of wisdom.

ULB:

⁷ In Jesus Christ we have redemption through his blood and the forgiveness of sins, according to the riches of his grace. ⁸ He lavished this grace upon us with all wisdom and understanding.

translationWords:

- [redeem, redemption, redeemer](#)
- [blood](#)
- [forgive, forgiveness](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [grace, gracious](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [understand, understanding](#)

translationNotes:

- **riches of his grace** - Paul speaks of God's grace as if it were material wealth. AT: "greatness of God's grace" or "abundance of God's grace" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **He lavished this grace upon us** - "He gave us this great amount of grace" or "He was extremely kind to us"
- **with all wisdom and understanding** - Possible meanings are 1) "because he has all wisdom and understanding" 2) "so that we might have great wisdom and understanding"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 01 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 01 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 1:9-10

UDB:

⁹ God has now explained the secret of his plan. He has helped us to know the great work of Christ that he had planned. He did that because he chose to do it in that way, and he showed us what Christ would do for us. ¹⁰ God planned that at the time that he appointed he would unite all things in heaven and all things on earth, and Christ would be the one who will rule them.

ULB:

⁹ God made known to us the hidden purpose of his will, according to what pleased him, and which he demonstrated in Christ, ¹⁰ with a view to a plan for the fullness of time, to bring all things together, all things in heaven and on earth, under one head, even Christ.

translationWords:

- [mystery, hidden truth](#)
- [in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [earth, earthly](#)

translationNotes:

- **according to what pleased him** - Possible meanings are 1) “because he wanted to make it known to us” or 2) “which was what he wanted.”
- **and which he demonstrated in Christ** - “and he demonstrated this purpose in Christ”
- **in Christ** - “by means of Christ”
- **with a view to a plan** - A new sentence can be started here. AT: “He did this with a view to a plan” or “He did this, thinking about a plan”
- **for the fullness of time** - “for when the time is right” or “for the time that he has appointed”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 01 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 01 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 1:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ Long ago God chose to unite us to Christ. He planned to do this, and he always does exactly what he wishes to do. ¹² God did that so that we who believe in Christ would live to give praise to God's glory. We were the first ones to trust in Christ.

ULB:

¹¹ In Christ we were appointed as heirs. We were decided on beforehand according to the plan of him who works out everything according to the purpose of his will. ¹² God appointed us as heirs so that we might be the first to have confident hope in Christ, so we would be for the praise of his glory.

translationWords:

- [chosen one, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, the elect](#)
- [praise](#)
- [glory, glorious](#)
- [confidence, confident](#)

translationNotes:

- **we were appointed as heirs** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "God chose us to be heirs" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **We were decided on beforehand** - "God chose us earlier"
- **so that we might be the first** - Here the word "we" refers to the Jewish believers who first heard the good news, not the believers at Ephesus. (See: [Exclusive "We"](#))
- **so we would be for the praise of his glory** - "so that we would live to praise him for his glory"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 01 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 01 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 1:13-14

UDB:

¹³ It was in Christ that you also, after you had heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation—it was in him that you also have believed and were sealed with the promised Holy Spirit. ¹⁴ The Holy Spirit is proof that we will receive all that God has promised. All this is great reason to praise him!

ULB:

¹³ In Christ, you also, when you had heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation, you believed in him and were sealed with the promised Holy Spirit, ¹⁴ who is the guarantee of our inheritance until we take full possession of it, to the praise of his glory.

translationWords:

- [in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him](#)
- [Christ, Messiah](#)
- [word of truth](#)
- [good news, gospel](#)
- [salvation](#)
- [believe, believe in, belief](#)
- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord](#)
- [inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir](#)

translationNotes:

- **were sealed with the promised Holy Spirit** - Wax was placed on a letter and stamped with a symbol representing the person who wrote the letter. Paul uses this custom as a picture to show how God has used the Holy Spirit to assure us that we belong to him. AT: “God has sealed you with the Holy Spirit that he promised” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **the guarantee of our inheritance** - Receiving what God has promised is spoken of as though one inherits property or wealth from a family member. AT: “the guarantee that we will receive what God has promised” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 01 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 01 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 1:15-16

UDB:

¹⁵ Because God has done so much for you, and because I heard how you trust in the Lord Jesus and love all whom God has chosen for himself, ¹⁶ I have not stopped thanking God for you and praying for you often.

ULB:

¹⁵ For this reason, ever since I heard about your faith in the Lord Jesus and your love for all God's holy people, ¹⁶ I have not stopped thanking God for you as I mention you in my prayers.

translationWords:

- [faith](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
- [love](#)
- [set apart](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul prays for the Ephesian believers and praises God for the power that believers have through Christ.
- **I have not stopped thanking God** - Paul uses “not stopped” to emphasize that he continues to thank God. AT: “I continue to thank God” (See: [Litotes](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 01 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 01 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 1:17-18

UDB:

¹⁷ I pray that the God of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Father who lives in shining light, may help you think wisely and understand everything about what he reveals to you. ¹⁸ I pray that God may teach you about what he wants to do for us, and why we know he is speaking the truth. I pray that we may know how great are the things he promises to give to us and to everyone whom he will choose to belong to himself.

ULB:

¹⁷ I pray that the God of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Father of glory, will give to you a spirit of wisdom and revelation in the knowledge of him. ¹⁸ I pray that the eyes of your heart may be enlightened, that you may know the confident hope to which he has called you and the riches of his glorious inheritance among all God's holy people.

translationWords:

- God
- Lord
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- God the Father, heavenly Father, Father
- glory, glorious
- wise, wisdom
- reveal, revelation
- heart
- call, calling, called, call out
- glory, glorious
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

translationNotes:

- **a spirit of wisdom and revelation in the knowledge of him** - “spiritual wisdom to understand his revelation”
- **that the eyes of your heart may be enlightened** - The phrase “eyes of your heart” expresses one’s ability to gain understanding. AT: “that you may gain understanding and be enlightened” (See: **Idiom**)
- **that the eyes of your heart may be enlightened** - This may be stated in the active tense. AT: that God may enlighten your heart” or “that God may enlighten your understanding” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **enlightened** - “made to see”

- **inheritance** - Receiving what God has promised believers, is spoken of as if one were inheriting property and wealth from a family member. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **all God's holy people** - This can be stated in the active tense. AT: "all those whom he has set apart for himself" or "all those who belong completely to him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 01 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 01 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 1:19-21

UDB:

¹⁹ And I pray that you will know how very powerfully God acts for us who are trusting in Christ. He works powerfully for us, ²⁰ just like he acted powerfully for Christ when he caused Christ to become alive again after he died, and raised him to the place of highest honor in heaven. ²¹ In that place, Christ rules as supreme over every powerful spirit on every level of authority and over every name that exists. Jesus is much higher than any other being, not only now, but forever.

ULB:

¹⁹ And in my prayers I ask that you may know the immeasurable greatness of his power in us who believe, according to the working of his great strength. ²⁰ This is the same power that God worked in Christ when he raised him from the dead ones and seated him at his right hand in the heavenly places. ²¹ He seated Christ far above all rule and authority and power and dominion, and every name that is named. Christ will rule, not only in this age, but also in the age to come.

translationWords:

- power, powers
- believe, believe in, belief
- Christ, Messiah
- God
- raise, rise, risen, arise, arose
- right hand
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- ruler, rulers, rule
- authority
- dominion
- name

translationNotes:

- **the immeasurable greatness of his power** - God's power is far beyond all other power.
- **in us** - "for our benefit" or "in relation to us"
- **the working of his great strength** - "his great power that is at work for us"
- **raised him from the dead ones** - "raised him from death" or "made him alive again"
- **seated him at his right hand** - "seated Christ at God's right hand" or "seated Christ in the place of honor" (See: **Idiom**)
- **in the heavenly places** - "in the supernatural world." The word "heavenly" refers to the place where God is. See how this is translated in **1:3**.

- **far above all rule and authority and power and dominion** - These are different terms for the ranks of supernatural beings, both angelic and demonic. AT: “far above all types of supernatural beings”
- **every name that is named** - This can be stated in active form. AT: Possible meanings are 1) “every name that man gives” or 2) “every name that God gives” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **name** - Possible meanings are 1) title or 2) position of authority. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **in this age** - “at this time”
- **in the age to come** - “in the future”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 01 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 01 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 1:22-23

UDB:

²² God has put all beings under the rule of Christ, as if they were all under his feet. And God has appointed Christ as the ruler over everything among all believers everywhere. ²³ It is as if all believers together were Christ's own body. He fills all believers everywhere with his power, just as he fills all the universe with his power.

ULB:

²² God put all things under Christ's feet and gave him to the church as head over all things. ²³ The church is his body, the fullness of him who fills all in all.

translationWords:

- [Christ, Messiah](#)
- [head](#)
- [church, Church](#)

translationNotes:

- **God has subjected** - "God placed" or "God has put" (UDB)
- **all things under Christ's feet** - Here "feet" represents Christ's lordship, authority, and power. AT: "all things under Christ's power" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **has made him the head ... his body** - Just as with a human body, the head rules all things pertaining to its body, so Christ is the head of the church body. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the head over all things in the church** - Here "head" refers to the leader or the one who is in charge. AT: "ruler over all things in the church" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **that is his body** - The church is often referred to as the body of Christ. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the fullness of him who fills all things in all ways** - "Christ fills the church with his life and power just as he gives life to all things"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 01 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 01 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 2 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter focuses on a Christian's life before coming to faith in Jesus. Paul then uses this information to explain how a person's former way of living is distinct from a Christian's new identity "in Christ." (See: [faith](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

One body

Paul teaches about the church in this chapter. The church is made of two different groups of people (Jews and Gentiles) who are now one group or "body." It is also known as Jesus's body because Jesus unites them.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

"Dead in trespasses and sins"

Paul teaches that someone who is not a Christian is "dead" in their sin. This means that they are in bondage or enslaved to their sin, which leads to death unless they come to faith in Jesus. (See: [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [faith](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Metaphors for worldly living

Paul uses many different metaphor to describe how the non-Christian world acts. They "walked according to the age of this world," "walked according to the ruler of the authorities of the air," "acting according to the evil desires of our flesh" and "doing the will of the flesh and the mind."

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

"It is a gift of God"

Most scholars believe "it" refers to salvation, while others believe that it is faith that is the gift of God. Because of agreement in the Greek wording, it is more probable that salvation is what Paul refers to as the gift of God here.

Flesh

This is a complex issue and it is possible that "flesh" is a metaphor for a person's sinful nature. "Gentiles in the flesh" indicates the Ephesians once lived without any concern for God. Flesh is also used in this verse to refer to the physical part of man. (See: [flesh](#))

Links:

- **Ephesians 02:01 Notes**

Ephesians 2:1-3

UDB:

¹ Before you trusted Christ you were powerless to obey God. You were as helpless as a person who is dead. ² You were like most people in the world today, and you, too, did what Satan wants—Satan is the ruler the evil spirits who have such power over the world. Satan is the evil spirit who is at work in the lives of people who disobey God. ³ We were at one time among those who disobeyed God; we did the evil things that we desired, things that would bring pleasure to our bodies and our minds. So God was very angry with us, just as with the others.

ULB:

² ¹ And as for you, you were dead in your trespasses and sins. ² It was in these trespasses and sins that you once lived according to the ways of this world. You were living according to the ruler of the authorities of the air, the spirit that is working in the sons of disobedience. ³ Once we all lived among these people, fulfilling the evil desires of our sinful nature, and carrying out the desires of the body and of the mind. We were by nature children of wrath, like the rest of humanity.

translationWords:

- death, die, dead
- trespass
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- walk
- world, worldly
- ruler, rulers, rule
- authority
- spirit, spiritual
- disobey, disobedient, disobedience
- unbeliever, unbelief
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- flesh
- wrath, fury

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul reminds the believers of their past and the way they now are before God.
- **you were dead in your trespasses and sins** - This shows how sinful people are unable to obey God in the same way a dead person is unable to respond physically. (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **your trespasses and sins** - The words “trespasses” and “sins” have similar meanings. Paul uses them together to emphasize the greatness of the people’s sin. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **according to the ways of this world** - The apostles also used “world” to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. AT: “according to the values of people living in the world” or “following the principles of this present world” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the ruler of the authorities of the air** - This refers to the devil or Satan.
- **the spirit that is working** - “the spirit of Satan, who is working”
- **the desires of the body and of the mind** - The words “body” and “mind” represent the entire person. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **children of wrath** - people with whom God is angry (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 02 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 02 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 2:4-7

UDB:

⁴ But God acts very mercifully, and he loves us very much. ⁵ We were like dead people, powerless to obey God, but then he made us live again by joining us to Christ. God has saved us because he has been very, very kind to us. ⁶ He raised us up from among those who are like dead people, and he gave us seats of honor to rule with Christ Jesus in heavenly places. ⁷ He did this to show in future times how kind he has been to us, for we are joined to Christ Jesus.

ULB:

⁴ But God is rich in mercy because of his great love with which he loved us. ⁵ While we were dead in trespasses, he made us alive together in Christ—by grace you have been saved. ⁶ God raised us up together with Christ, and God made us sit together in the heavenly places in Christ Jesus, ⁷ so that in the ages to come he might show to us the immeasurably great riches of his grace expressed in his kindness toward us in Christ Jesus.

translationWords:

- God
- mercy, merciful
- love
- death, die, dead
- trespass
- life, live, living, alive
- in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him
- grace, gracious
- save, safe
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

translationNotes:

- **God is rich in mercy** - “God is abundant in mercy” or “God is very kind to us”
- **because of his great love with which he loved us** - “because of his great love for us” or “because he loves us very much”
- **While we were dead in trespasses, he made us alive together in Christ** - This shows how a sinful person is unable to obey God until he is given new spiritual life just like a dead person is unable to respond physically unless he is raised from the dead. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **he made us alive together in Christ** - “In Christ” and similar expressions are metaphors that frequently occur in the New Testament letters. They express the strongest kind of relationship possible between Christ and those who believe in him.

- **by grace you have been saved** - This can be stated in an active form. AT: “God saved us because of his great kindness toward us” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **God raised us up together with Christ, and God made us sit together in the heavenly places in Christ Jesus** - Just as he already raised Christ, he will raise us up too, and we will be with Christ in heaven.
- **in the heavenly places** - “in the supernatural world.” The word “heavenly” refers to the place where God is. See how this is translated in [1:3](#).
- **in Christ Jesus** - “In Christ Jesus” and similar expressions are metaphors that frequently occur in the New Testament letters. They express the strongest kind of relationship possible between Christ and those who believe in him.
- **in the ages to come** - “in the future”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 02 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 02 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 2:8-10

UDB:

⁸ For God has saved you from his punishment by his extreme kindness given to you because you trust Jesus. You have not saved yourselves; this is a gift from God—⁹ a gift that no one can earn, so no one can boast and say that he has saved himself. ¹⁰ So God has created us as new people joined to Christ Jesus, so we can do good things—things that God planned long ago for us to do.

ULB:

⁸ For by grace you have been saved through faith, and this did not come from you, it is the gift of God. ⁹ Grace is not from works and so no one may boast. ¹⁰ For we are God's workmanship, created in Christ Jesus to do good deeds that God planned long ago for us, so that we would walk in them.

translationWords:

- grace, gracious
- save, safe
- faith
- gift
- God
- works, deeds, work, acts
- boast, boastful
- in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- good, goodness
- walk

translationNotes:

- **For by grace you have been saved through faith** - God's kindness to us is the reason he made it possible for us to be saved from judgment if we simply trust in Jesus. AT: "God saved you by grace because of your faith in him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **and this did not** - The word "this" refers back to "by grace you have been saved by faith."
- **not from works** - "this salvation did not come because of good things you have done"
- **in Christ Jesus** - "In Christ Jesus" and similar expressions are metaphors that frequently occur in the New Testament letters. They express the strongest kind of relationship possible between Christ and those who believe in him.
- **walk in** - "follow" or "do" (UDB)

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 02 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 02 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 2:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ Do not forget that you non-Jewish believers were previously called Gentiles because you were not born as Jews. The Jews insulted you by calling you “uncircumcised pagans.” They call themselves “the circumcision”; by this they mean that they, not you, are God’s people, although circumcision is something that only humans do, not God. ¹² At that time, you did not have any part of Christ and you were not part of his people Israel. You did not know God’s promises and law. You did not have confidence in the future that God promised you, and as you lived your lives, you did not know God.

ULB:

¹¹ Therefore remember that once you were Gentiles in the flesh. You are called “uncircumcision” by what is called the “circumcision” in the flesh made by human hands. ¹² For at that time you were separated from Christ. You were foreigners to the people of Israel. You were strangers to the covenants of the promise. You had no certain hope about the future. You were without God in the world.

translationWords:

- Gentile
- flesh
- uncircumcised, uncircumcision
- circumcise, circumcision
- Christ, Messiah
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- covenant
- God
- world, worldly

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul reminds these believers that God has now made Gentiles and Jews into one body through Christ and his cross.
- **Gentiles in the flesh** - This refers to people who were not born Jewish. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **uncircumcision** - Non-Jewish people were not circumcised as babies and thus the Jews considered them people who do not follow any of God’s laws. AT: “uncircumcised pagans” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **circumcision** - This was another term for Jewish people because all male infants were circumcised when they were 8 days old. AT: “circumcised people” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **separated from Christ** - “unbelievers”

- **what is called the “circumcision” in the flesh made by human hands** - Possible meanings are 1) “Jews, who are circumcised by humans” or 2) “Jews, who circumcise the physical body.”
- **by what is called** - This can be translated with an active form. AT: “by what people call” or “by those whom people call” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **strangers to the covenants of the promise** - Paul speaks to the Gentile believers as if they had been foreigners, kept out of the land of God’s covenant and promise. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 02 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 02 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 2:13-16

UDB:

¹³ But now because of what Christ Jesus has done, you have been able to trust in him because Christ agreed to die on the cross.

¹⁴ Christ has brought peace and unity between Jews and non-Jews by destroying the barrier between us, as if he had destroyed a wall of hate that separated our peoples from one another. ¹⁵ He made it no longer necessary for us to obey all the Jewish laws and commandments. He made Jews and non-Jews into one people instead of two because he made peace between us. ¹⁶ Jesus caused Jews and non-Jews together to both become friends with God in one new group of believers. By dying on the cross, Jesus made it possible for them to stop hating each other.

ULB:

¹³ But now in Christ Jesus you who once were far away from God have been brought near by the blood of Christ. ¹⁴ For he is our peace. He made the two one. By his flesh he destroyed the wall of hostility that divided us. ¹⁵ That is, he abolished the law of commandments and regulations so that he might create one new man in himself, and so making peace. ¹⁶ Christ reconciles both peoples into one body to God through the cross, putting to death the hostility.

translationWords:

- in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him
- God
- blood
- Christ, Messiah
- peace, peaceful
- flesh
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- command, to command, commandment
- reconcile, reconciliation
- cross
- death, die, dead

translationNotes:

- **But now in Christ Jesus** - Paul is marking a contrast between the Ephesians before they believed in Christ and after they believed in Christ.
- **you who once were far away from God have been brought near by the blood of Christ** - Due to the believers' sins, they were separated from God. However, now Jesus has brought them near to God by his blood. AT:]

- **by the blood of Christ** - The blood of Christ is a metonym for his death. AT: “by Christ’s death” or “when Christ died for us” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **he is our peace** - “Jesus gives us his peace”
- **He made the two one** - “He made the Jews and Gentiles one”
- **By his flesh** - “By the death of his body on the cross” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the wall of hostility** - “the wall of hatred” or “the wall of ill will”
- **that divided us** - The word “us” refers to Paul and the Ephesians. The Gentiles were separated from the Jews. AT: “that separated us Jews and Gentiles from one another” (See [Inclusive “We”](#))
- **he abolished the law of commandments and regulations** - Jesus’ blood satisfied the law of Moses so that both the Jews and Gentiles can live at peace in God.
- **one new man** - a single new people, the people of redeemed humanity (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **in himself** - It is union with Christ that makes reconciliation possible between Jews and Gentiles.
- **Christ reconciles both peoples** - “Christ brings the Jews and the Gentiles together in peace”
- **through the cross** - The cross here represents Christ’s death on the cross. AT: “by means of Christ’s death on the cross” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **putting to death the hostility** - Stopping their hostility is spoken of as if he killed their hostility. By dying on the cross Jesus eliminated the reason for Jews and Gentiles to be hostile toward each other. Neither are now required to live according to the law of Moses. AT: “stopping them from hating one another” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 02 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 02 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 2:17-18

UDB:

¹⁷ Jesus came and proclaimed the gospel that brings peace with God; he proclaimed it both to you non-Jews, who did not know about God, and to us Jews, who did know about God. ¹⁸ Through Jesus both Jews and non-Jews now can speak with the Father because God's Spirit lives in all believers.

ULB:

¹⁷ Jesus came and proclaimed peace to you who were far away and peace to those who were near. ¹⁸ For through Jesus we both have access in one Spirit to the Father.

translationWords:

- [proclaim, proclamation](#)
- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord](#)
- [God the Father, heavenly Father, Father](#)

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul tells the Ephesian believers that present Gentile believers are also now made one with the Jewish apostles and prophets; they are a temple for God in the Spirit.
- **proclaimed peace** - “announced the gospel of peace” or “declared the gospel of peace”
- **you who were far away** - This refers to the Gentiles or non-Jews.
- **those who were near** - This refers to the Jews.
- **For through Jesus we both have access** - Here “we both” refers to Paul, the believing Jews, and the believing non-Jews. (See: [Inclusive “We”](#))
- **in one Spirit** - All believers, both Jewish and Gentile, are given the right to enter into the presence of God the Father by the same Holy Spirit.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 02 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 02 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 2:19-22

UDB:

¹⁹ Therefore now you non-Jews are no longer strangers and foreigners to God's people, but instead you are fellow members with those whom God has set apart for himself, and you belong to God's family for whom God is the Father. ²⁰ You are like stones that God has made to be part of his building, and the building is built on what the apostles and prophets taught. The most important stone, the cornerstone, of the building is Christ Jesus himself. ²¹ Jesus is increasing his family of believers and fitting them together like a temple of stones is built and fit together, increasing as the Lord joins new believers to himself. ²² Jesus is building you up together, both Jews and non-Jews, into one family in which God lives by means of his Spirit.

ULB:

¹⁹ So then, now you Gentiles are no longer strangers and foreigners. Instead you are fellow citizens with God's holy people and members of God's household. ²⁰ You have been built on the foundation of the apostles and prophets, and Christ Jesus himself was the cornerstone. ²¹ In him the whole building fits together and grows as a temple in the Lord. ²² It is in him that you also are being built together as a dwelling place for God in the Spirit.

translationWords:

- Gentile
- set apart
- God
- apostle, apostleship
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Christ, Messiah
- cornerstone
- temple
- in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him

translationNotes:

- **you Gentiles ... God's household** - Paul is again speaking of the spiritual condition of Gentiles after they become believers as he would speak about foreigners becoming citizens of a different nation. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **You have been built on the foundation** - Paul speaks of God's people as if they were a building. Christ is the cornerstone, the apostles are the foundation, and the believers are the structure. (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **You have been built** - This can be stated in the active tense. AT: “God has built you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **the whole building fits together and grows as a temple** - Paul continues to speak of Christ’s family as if it were a building. In the same way a builder fits stones together while building, so Christ is fitting us together. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **In him ... in the Lord ... in him** - “In Christ ... in the Lord Jesus ... in Christ” These metaphors express the strongest kind of relationship possible between Christ and those who believe in him. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **you also are being built together as a dwelling place for God in the Spirit** - This describes how believers are being put together to become a place where God will permanently live through the power of the Holy Spirit. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **you also are being built together** - This can be stated as active. AT: “God is also building you together” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 02 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 02 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 3 General Notes

Structure and formatting

“I pray”

This chapter is structured loosely as a prayer, but it is not a typical prayer. This is a unique “prayer” where Paul is not just talking to God directly. He is also giving written instructions to the church in Ephesus.

Special concepts in this chapter

Mystery

Paul refers to the church as a “mystery.” The role of the church in the plans of God was once not known, but has now been revealed by God. Part of this mystery involve the Gentile’s equal standing with the Jews in the current plans of God.

Links:

- [Ephesians 03:01 Notes](#)

Ephesians 3:1-2

UDB:

¹ Because God has done all this for you non-Jews, Christ Jesus has put me, Paul, in prison for your sake. ² I assume that you know that God has honored me by giving me a certain task to do for your sake.

ULB:

³ ¹ Because of this I, Paul, am the prisoner of Christ Jesus for you Gentiles. ² I assume that you have heard of the stewardship of the grace of God that was given to me for you.

translationWords:

- [Paul, Saul](#)
- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
- [Gentile](#)
- [God](#)

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - To make clear the hidden truth about the church to believers, Paul refers back to the oneness of Jews and Gentiles and the temple of which believers are now a part.
- **Because of this** - “Because of God’s grace to you”
- **the prisoner of Christ Jesus** - “the one whom Christ Jesus has put in prison”
- **the stewardship of the grace of God that was given to me for you** - “the responsibility that God gave me to bring his grace to you”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 03 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 03 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 3:3-5

UDB:

³ He gave me this task because of the secret truth about which I wrote to you briefly; ⁴ when you read what I have already written briefly about that, you will be able to understand that I clearly understand the truth about Christ. ⁵ Formerly, God did not fully reveal the good news that was to come to anyone. It was something that no one understood, but now his Spirit has revealed the good news to his apostles and prophets whom the Spirit called to serve God.

ULB:

³ I am writing according to the revelation made known to me. This is the hidden truth about which I briefly wrote to you. ⁴ When you read about this, you will be able to understand my insight into this hidden truth about Christ. ⁵ In other generations this truth was not made known to the sons of men. But now it has been revealed by the Spirit to his apostles and prophets who were set apart for this work.

translationWords:

- reveal, revelation
- know, knowledge, make known
- mystery, hidden truth
- Christ, Messiah
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord
- apostle, apostleship
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

translationNotes:

- **according to the revelation made known to me** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “according to what God revealed to me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **about which I briefly wrote to you** - Paul refers to another letter he had written to these people.
- **In other generations this truth was not made known to the sons of men** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “God did not make these things known to people in the past” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **But now it has been revealed by the Spirit** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “But now the Spirit has revealed it” or “But now the Spirit has made it known” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **his apostles and prophets who were set apart for this work** - “the apostles and prophets whom God set apart to do this work”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 03 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 03 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 3:6-7

UDB:

⁶ This hidden truth is that the non-Jews now share together with Jews the spiritual riches of God, and belong to the same group of God's people, and will share all the things God has promised them because they are joined to Christ Jesus—this is the gospel. ⁷ I am now God's servant to spread the good news, a work I did not deserve to do, but which God gave me working in me with his power.

ULB:

⁶ This hidden truth is that the Gentiles are fellow heirs, and fellow members of the body, and they share the promise in Christ Jesus through the gospel. ⁷ For I became a servant of this gospel by the gift of God's grace given to me through the working of his power.

translationWords:

- Gentile
- heir
- body
- promise
- in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him
- Christ, Messiah
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- good news, gospel
- servant, slave, slavery
- gift
- God
- grace, gracious
- power, powers

translationNotes:

- **the Gentiles are fellow heirs ... through the gospel** - This is the hidden truth Paul began to explain in the previous verse. The Gentiles who receive Christ also receive the same things as the Jewish believers.
- **fellow members of the body** - The church is often referred to as the body of Christ. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **in Christ Jesus** - "In Christ Jesus" and similar expressions are metaphors that frequently occur in the New Testament letters. They express the strongest kind of relationship possible between Christ and those who believe in him.

- **through the gospel** - Possible meanings are 1) because of the gospel the Gentiles are fellow sharers in the promise or 2) because of the gospel the Gentiles are fellow heirs and members of the body and fellow sharers in the promise.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 03 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 03 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 3:8-9

UDB:

⁸ Although I am the least worthy of all God's people, God has enabled me by his kindness and mercy to proclaim to non-Jews the good news about what Christ has done for us, which is so much that no one can learn all about it. ⁹ My mission is to explain to everyone what God's plan is, something that God has kept hidden from long ago, from the time when he created everything.

ULB:

⁸ God gave this gift to me, although I am the least of all God's holy people. This gift is that I should proclaim to the Gentiles the gospel of the unsearchable riches of Christ. ⁹ God's gift to me is that I will bring to light to everyone what God's plan is. This plan had been hidden for ages in the past by God, who created all things.

translationWords:

- gift
- set apart
- God
- Gentile
- good news, gospel
- Christ, Messiah
- mystery, hidden truth

translationNotes:

- **God's holy people** - "those whom God has set apart for himself"
- **unsearchable** - unable to be completely known (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **riches of Christ** - Paul speaks of the truth about Christ and the blessings he brings as if they were material wealth. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **bring to light to everyone what God's plan is** - Bringing light to people represents teaching them. AT: "shine a light on God's secret plan so all people will know what it is" or "teach all people what God's secret plan is" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **This plan had been hidden for ages in the past by God, who created all things** - This can be stated in active form. "God, who created all things, had kept this plan hidden for long ages in the past" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)

- Ephesians 03 General Notes
- **Ephesians 03 Translation Questions**

Ephesians 3:10-11

UDB:

¹⁰ What God has wisely planned, he has even shown to powerful angels in heaven through his people who trust in Christ. ¹¹ That is what God had always planned for eternity, and it is what he accomplished through the work of Christ Jesus our Lord.

ULB:

¹⁰ This plan was made known through the church so the rulers and authorities in the heavenly places would come to know the many-sided nature of the wisdom of God. ¹¹ This happened according to the eternal plan that he accomplished in Christ Jesus our Lord.

translationWords:

- church, Church
- ruler, rulers, rule
- authority
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- wise, wisdom
- God
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- Lord

translationNotes:

- **the rulers and authorities in the heavenly places would come to know the many-sided nature of the wisdom of God** - “God will make his great wisdom known to the rulers and authorities in the heavenly places through the Church”
- **rulers and authorities** - These words share similar meanings. Paul uses them together to emphasize that every spiritual being will know God’s wisdom. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **in the heavenly places** - “in the supernatural world.” The word “heavenly” refers to the place where God is. See how this is translated in [1:3](#).
- **the many-sided nature of the wisdom of God** - God’s complex wisdom (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **according to the eternal plan** - “in keeping with the eternal plan” or “consistent with the eternal plan”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 03 General Notes](#)

- Ephesians 03 Translation Questions

Ephesians 3:12-13

UDB:

¹² So now when we pray, we can come to God confidently and without being afraid, because we trust in Jesus, who has fulfilled God's plan. ¹³ So I ask that you do not be discouraged because of my suffering many things for you here in prison, which actually end up honoring you.

ULB:

¹² For in Christ we have boldness and access with confidence because of our faith in him. ¹³ Therefore I ask you not to be discouraged because of what I am suffering for you, which is your glory.

translationWords:

- [in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him](#)
- [faith](#)
- [suffer, suffering](#)
- [glory, glorious](#)

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul praises God in his sufferings and prays for these Ephesian believers.
- **we have boldness** - “we are without fear” or “we have courage”
- **access with confidence** - “access into God's presence with confidence” or “freedom to enter into God's presence with confidence” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **confidence** - “certainty” or “assurance”
- **which is your glory** - Here “your glory” is a metonym for the pride they should feel or will feel in the future kingdom. The Christians in Ephesus should be proud of what Paul is suffering in prison. AT: “This is for your benefit” or “You should be proud of this” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 03 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 03 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 3:14-16

UDB:

¹⁴ Because God has done all this for you, I kneel and pray to God our Father. ¹⁵ He is the one who gives every family in heaven and on the earth their name. ¹⁶ I pray because of his great power that God will give you power and will strengthen you by his Spirit who lives in your spirits.

ULB:

¹⁴ For this reason I bend my knees to the Father, ¹⁵ from whom every family in heaven and on earth is named. ¹⁶ I pray that he would grant you, according to the riches of his glory, to be strengthened with power through his Spirit, who is in you.

translationWords:

- [God the Father, heavenly Father, Father](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [glory, glorious](#)
- [power, powers](#)
- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord](#)

translationNotes:

- **For this reason** - “Because God has done all this for you” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **I bend my knees to the Father** - Bowed knees are a picture of the whole person in an attitude of prayer. AT: “I bow down in prayer to the Father” or “I humbly pray to the Father” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **from whom every family in heaven and on earth is named** - The act of naming here probably also represents the act of creating. AT: “who created and named every family in heaven and on earth” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **he would grant you, according to the riches of his glory, to be strengthened with power** - “God, because he is so great and powerful, would allow you to become strong with his power”
- **would grant** - “would give”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 03 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 03 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 3:17-19

UDB:

¹⁷ I pray that Christ may live in your hearts because you trust in him, and that you will be like a firmly rooted tree and a building founded upon stone, ¹⁸ so that you may be fully able to understand, along with the all those set apart for God, how wide and long and high and deep is the love of Christ. ¹⁹ For this love is so great that we cannot understand it, but because of this love, I pray that God may fill you all with himself.

ULB:

¹⁷ I pray that Christ may live in your hearts through faith, that you will be rooted and grounded in his love. ¹⁸ May you have strength so you can understand, along with all the believers, what is the width, the length, the height, and the depth, ¹⁹ and that you may know the love of Christ, which goes beyond knowledge, and that you may be filled with all the fullness of God.

translationWords:

- Christ, Messiah
- heart
- faith
- love
- believer
- God

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul continues the prayer he began in [3:14](#).
- **that Christ may live in your hearts through faith, that you will be rooted and grounded in his love** - This is the second item for which Paul prays that God will “grant” the Ephesians “according to the riches of his glory”; the first is that they would “be strengthened” ([3:16](#)).
- **hearts through faith** - Here “heart” represents a person’s inner being, and “through” expresses the means by which Christ lives within the believer. Christ lives in the hearts of believers because God graciously allows them to have faith. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **faith, that you will be rooted and grounded in his love. May you have strength so you can understand** - Possible meanings are 1) “faith. I pray that you will be rooted and grounded in his love so that you can understand” or 2) “faith so you will be rooted and grounded in his love. I also pray that you can understand”
- **that you will be rooted and grounded in his love** - Paul speaks of their faith as if it were a tree that has deep roots or a house built on a solid foundation. AT: “that you will be like a firmly rooted tree and a building built on stone” (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **so you can understand** - This is the second item for which Paul bends his knees and prays; the first is, that God will grant that they be strengthened (3:16) and that Christ may live in their hearts through faith (3:17). And “understand” is the first thing that Paul prays that the Ephesians themselves will be able to do.
- **all the believers** - “all believers in Christ” or “all the saints”
- **the width, the length, the height, and the depth** - Possible meanings are 1) these words describe the greatness of God’s wisdom, AT: “how very wise God is” or 2) these word describe the intensity of Christ’s love for us. AT: “how much Christ loves us” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **that you may know the love of Christ** - This is the second thing that Paul prays that the Ephesians will be able to do; the first is that they “understand.” AT: “that you can know how great Christ’s love for us is”
- **that you may be filled with all the fullness of God** - This is the third item for which Paul bends his knees and prays (3:14-16); the first is that they would “be strengthened” (3:16), and the second is that they “can understand” (3:18).

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 03 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 03 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 3:20-21

UDB:

²⁰ God is able to do much greater things than we usually ask him to do, or even that we might think that he can do, because of his power that is working within us. ²¹ May all believers assembled to worship God, and Christ Jesus himself, honor God more than they honor anything else. May all believers from all generations of history praise him forever and ever! So let it be done.

ULB:

²⁰ Now to him who is able to do far beyond all that we ask or think, according to his power that works in us, ²¹ to him be glory in the church and in Christ Jesus to all generations forever and ever. Amen.

translationWords:

- [power, powers](#)
- [glory, glorious](#)
- [church, Church](#)
- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
- [generation](#)
- [amen, truly](#)

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul concludes his prayer with a blessing.
- **General Information:** - The words “we” and “us” in this book continue to include all Paul and all believers. (See: [Exclusive “We”](#))
- **Now to him who** - “Now to God, who”
- **everything far, far above** - God can do far more than we could ever ask or imagine.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 03 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 03 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 4 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations of the Old Testament. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 4:8, which is a quotation from the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

Spiritual gifts

Spiritual gifts are specific supernatural abilities given to Christians after they come to faith in Jesus. This is not an exhaustive list of the spiritual gifts. Some scholars believe there are some gifts only given in the early church because they were foundational to the development of the church. (See: [faith](#))

Unity

Paul places a great importance on unity in the church. This is a major theme of this chapter.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Old man and new man

The term “old man” probably refers to the sinful nature that a person is born with, while the “new man” is the new nature or new life that is given to a person after they come to faith in Christ. Paul also uses the terms old/new self and old/new creation in the same way.

Links:

- [Ephesians 04:01 Notes](#)

Ephesians 4:1-3

UDB:

¹ Therefore, from this prison where I am because I proclaim the Lord Jesus, I urge you whom God has chosen to live in a way that honors Jesus, who called you. ² Humbly and gently and patiently serve the needs of one another because you love each other. ³ Do all you can to remain united with one another by peacefully living together with each other.

ULB:

⁴ ¹ I, therefore, as the prisoner for the Lord, urge you to walk worthily of the calling by which you were called. ² I urge you to live with great humility and gentleness and patience, putting up with one another in love. ³ Do your best to keep the unity of the Spirit in the bond of peace.

translationWords:

- [prison, prisoner, imprison](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [call, calling, called, call out](#)
- [humble, humility](#)
- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord](#)
- [peace, peaceful](#)

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Because of what Paul has been writing to the Ephesians, he tells them how they should live their lives as believers and again emphasizes that believers are to agree with each other.
- **as the prisoner for the Lord** - “as someone who is in prison because of his choice to serve the Lord”
- **walk worthily of the calling** - Walking is a common way to express the idea of living one’s life. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **live with great humility and gentleness and patience** - “Learn to be humble, gentle, and patient”
- **keep the unity of the Spirit in the bond of peace** - “seek to live together in peace to maintain the unity of the Spirit”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)

- Ephesians 04 General Notes
- Ephesians 04 Translation Questions

Ephesians 4:4-6

UDB:

⁴ All believers form one group, and there is only one Holy Spirit, and you were chosen to confidently wait for God to fulfill His promises to you. ⁵ There is only one Lord, Jesus Christ, and there is one faith, that is the trust we have in God; and there is only one true Christian baptism. ⁶ There is one God, the true Father of all. He rules over everyone, and he is working through all events, and he is working within everything that happens.

ULB:

⁴ There is one body and one Spirit, just as also you were called in one certain hope of your calling. ⁵ And there is one Lord, one faith, one baptism, ⁶ and one God and Father of all, who is over all and through all and in all.

translationWords:

- [body](#)
- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord](#)
- [confidence, confident](#)
- [call, calling, called, call out](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [faith](#)
- [baptize, baptism](#)
- [God](#)
- [God the Father, heavenly Father, Father](#)

translationNotes:

- **one body** - The church is often referred to as the body of Christ. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **one Spirit** - “only one Holy Spirit” (UDB)
- **you were called in one certain hope of your calling** - “God called you to have one confident hope in your calling” or “there is one thing that God also chose you to be confident in and expect him to do” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Father of all ... over all ... through all ... and in all** - The word “all” here means “everything.”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 04 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 04 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 4:7-8

UDB:

⁷ God has generously given to each believer spiritual gifts that Christ has measured out to us as he wishes. ⁸ This is similar to what the Psalmist said about God receiving tribute money from those whom he had conquered,

When he ascended to his city at the top of the mountain,
he led the captives into captivity
and gave their gifts of tribute to his people.

ULB:

⁷ To each one of us grace has been given according to the measure of the gift of Christ. ⁸ It is as scripture says:

”When he ascended to the heights,
he led the captives into captivity,
and he gave gifts to the people.”

translationWords:

- [gift](#)
- [word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture](#)
- [enslave, in bondage](#)

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul reminds believers of the gifts that Christ gives believers to use in the church, which is the whole body of believers.
- **General Information:** - The quote here is from a song that King David wrote.
- **To each one of us grace has been given** - This can be stated using an active form. AT: “God has given grace to each one of us” or “God gave a gift to each believer” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **When he ascended to the heights** - “When Christ went up into heaven”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 04 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 04 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 4:9-10

UDB:

⁹ The words “he ascended” certainly make us know that Christ had also previously descended to the earth from heaven, like God’s anointed king coming down from Jerusalem to fight. ¹⁰ Christ, who descended to earth to conquer evil, is also the one who was crucified for our sins, came back to life, and ascended to the most exalted position in heaven, in order that he might control everything.

ULB:

⁹ What is the meaning of, “He ascended,” except that he also descended into the lower regions of the earth? ¹⁰ He who descended is the same person who also ascended far above all the heavens, that he might fill all things.

translationWords:

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)

translationNotes:

- **He ascended** - “Christ went up”
- **he also descended** - “Christ also came down”
- **into the lower regions of the earth** - Possible meanings are 1) the lower regions are a part of the earth or 2) “the lower regions” is another way of referring to the earth. AT: “into the lower regions, the earth.”
- **that he might fill all things** - “so that he might be present everywhere in his power”
- **fill** - “complete” or “satisfy”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 04 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 04 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 4:11-13

UDB:

¹¹ He appointed some believers to be apostles, some prophets, some evangelists, and some to lead and others to teach the groups of believers. ¹² This was to prepare God's people to do God's work and serve others, so that all the people who belong to Christ might become spiritually strong ¹³ He wants all of us believers to be united together as we all trust in him and grow to fully understand him. He wants us to become mature believers, together, growing to become perfect, as he himself is perfect.

ULB:

¹¹ Christ gave some to be apostles, some as prophets, some as evangelists, and some as pastors and teachers. ¹² He gave these offices to equip his holy people for the work of service, for the building up of the body of Christ. ¹³ He continues to build up his body until we all reach the unity of faith and knowledge of the Son of God, and that we become mature and so reach the measure of the fullness of Christ.

translationWords:

- **apostle, apostleship**
- **prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess**
- **evangelist**
- **pastor**
- **teacher, Teacher**
- **believer**
- **serve, service**
- **body**
- **Christ, Messiah**
- **faith**
- **know, knowledge, make known**
- **Son of God, the Son, Son**

translationNotes:

- **He gave these offices** - The one to whom Christ gave the gifts can be stated clearly. AT: "Christ gave these offices to the church" or "He gave people with these responsibilities to the church (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information**)
- **to equip his holy people** - "to prepare the people he has set apart" or "to provide the believers"
- **for the work of service** - "so they can serve others"

- **for the building up of the body of Christ** - Paul is speaking of people who grow spiritually as if they were doing exercises to increase the strength of their physical bodies. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Idiom](#))
- **building up** - “improvement”
- **body of Christ** - The “body of Christ” refers to all of the individual members of Christ’s Church.
- **reach the unity of faith and knowledge of the Son of God** - The believers need to know Jesus as the Son of God if they are to be united in faith and mature as believers.
- **reach the unity of faith** - “become equally strong in faith” or “become united together in faith”
- **Son of God** - This is an important title for Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))
- **become mature** - “become mature believers”
- **mature** - “fully developed,” “grown up,” or “complete”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 04 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 04 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 4:14-16

UDB:

¹⁴ Once we are mature, we will no longer be ignorant of what is true, like little children. We will no longer follow every new teaching, like a boat is blown around by the wind and waves. We will not allow people who teach what is false to trick us and deceive us. ¹⁵ Instead, we will live by loving God and trusting his true teachings, and we will become more and more like Christ in every way. He controls his people like a person's head controls his body. ¹⁶ He enables all believers everywhere to grow together and love each other, like a person's body fits together and holds together by the joints that connect the body together, which allows the body to grow and build itself up because the parts of body depend upon each other.

ULB:

¹⁴ Christ builds us up so that we should no longer be children who are tossed back and forth by the waves, and carried away by every wind of teaching and by the trickery of people in their deceitful schemes. ¹⁵ Instead, speaking the truth in love, we are to grow up in every way into him who is the head, that is, Christ. ¹⁶ Christ builds the whole body, and it is joined and held together by every supporting ligament, and when each part works together, that makes the body grow so that it builds itself up in love.

translationWords:

- true, truth, come true
- love
- Christ, Messiah
- body
- believer

translationNotes:

- **be children** - Paul refers to believers who have not grown spiritually as if they were children who have had very little experience in life. AT: “be like children” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **tossed back and forth ... carried away by every wind of teaching** - This speaks of a believer who has not become mature and follows wrong teaching as if that believer were a boat that the wind is blowing in different directions on the water. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **by the trickery of people in their deceitful schemes** - “by crafty people who trick believers with clever lies”
- **into him who is the head ... makes the body grow so that it builds itself up in love** - Paul uses the human body to describe how Christ causes believers to work together in harmony as the head of a body causes the body parts to work together to grow healthy. (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **by every supporting ligament** - A “ligament” is a strong band that connects bones or organs in place in the body.
- **in love** - “as the members love one another”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 04 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 04 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 4:17-19

UDB:

¹⁷ By the authority of the Lord Jesus, I strongly affirm that you must no longer live like the unbelieving non-Jews do. The futile way they think directs them how to live. ¹⁸ They are unable to think clearly about what is right or wrong. They cannot comprehend obeying God because they refuse to listen to his message, and so they do not have the eternal life that Jesus gives us. ¹⁹ They have chosen to do shameful things their bodies desire without stopping. They commit all kinds of immoral acts and are obsessed with them more and more, and they are greedy for anything they desire.

ULB:

¹⁷ Therefore, I say and insist on this in the Lord, that you must no longer live as the Gentiles live, in the futility of their minds. ¹⁸ They are darkened in their understanding, alienated from the life of God because of the ignorance that is in them, because of the hardness of their hearts. ¹⁹ They have no shame and have handed themselves over to sensuality, and they are continually practicing every kind of impurity.

translationWords:

- exhort, exhortation
- Lord
- Gentile
- life, live, living, alive
- God
- heart

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul tells them what they should no longer do now that they as believers are sealed by the Holy Spirit of God.
- **Therefore, I say and insist on this in the Lord** - “Because what I have just said, I will say something more to strongly encourage you because we all belong to the Lord”
- **you must no longer live as the Gentiles live, in the futility of their minds** - Walking is a metaphor for the way people live their lives. AT: “stop living like the Gentiles with their worthless thoughts” (See: **Idiom**)
- **They are darkened in their understanding** - They no longer think or reason clearly. AT: “They have darkened their thoughts” or “They are not able to understand” (See: **Metaphor** and **Active or Passive**)

- **alienated from the life of God because of the ignorance that is in them** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “Because they do not know God, they cannot live the way God wants his people to live” or “They have cut themselves off from the life of God by their ignorance” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **alienated** - “cut off” or “separated”
- **ignorance** - “lack of knowledge” or “lack of information”
- **because of the hardness of their hearts** - They refuse to listen to God and follow his teachings. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **have handed themselves over to sensuality** - Paul speaks of these people as if they were objects that they themselves were giving to other people, and he speaks of the way they want to satisfy their physical desires as if it were the person to whom they give themselves. AT: “only want to satisfy their physical desires” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 04 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 04 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 4:20-22

UDB:

²⁰ But when you learned about Christ you did not learn to live like that. ²¹ Now that you have heard about Jesus and he has taught you, you know that his way is the true way to live. ²² Jesus taught that you must stop living the way you used to live. You were like corpses that were decaying because you were deceiving yourselves with what you desired.

ULB:

²⁰ But that is not how you learned about Christ. ²¹ I assume that you have heard about him, and that you were taught in him, as the truth is in Jesus. ²² You were taught to put off what belongs to your former manner of life, to put off the old man. It is the old man that is corrupt because of its deceitful desires.

translationWords:

- Christ, Messiah
- true, truth, come true
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive

translationNotes:

- **But that is not how you learned about Christ** - The word “that” refers to the way the Gentiles live, as described in [4:17-19](#). This emphasizes that what the believers learned about Christ was the opposite of that . AT: “But what you learned about Christ was not like that”
- **I assume that you have heard ... and that you were taught** - Paul knows that the Ephesians have heard and been taught. (See: [Irony](#))
- **you were taught in him** - Possible meanings are 1) “Jesus’ people have taught you” or 2) “someone has taught you because you are Jesus’ people.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **as the truth is in Jesus** - “as everything about Jesus is true”
- **to put off what belongs to your former manner of life** - Paul is speaking of moral qualities as if they were pieces of clothing. AT: “to stop living according to your former manner of life” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **to put off the old man** - Paul is speaking of moral qualities as if they were pieces of clothing. AT: “to stop living as your former self did” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **old man** - The “old man” refers to the “old nature” or “former self.”
- **that is corrupt because of its deceitful desires** - Paul speaks of the sinful human nature as if it were a dead body falling apart in its grave. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 04 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 04 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 4:23-24

UDB:

²³ You must let God change your spirits and how you think. ²⁴ You must start living like new persons. God has created you as new persons. You are set apart for him. He created you to live in the right way, to be truly dedicated to God.

ULB:

²³ You were taught to be renewed in the spirit of your minds, ²⁴ and to put on the new man that is created in the image of God—in true righteousness and holiness.

translationWords:

- [spirit, spiritual](#)
- [mind](#)
- [righteous, righteousness](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)
- [true, truth, come true](#)

translationNotes:

- **to be renewed in the spirit of your minds** - This may be translated with an active form. AT: “to allow God to change your attitudes and thoughts” or “to allow God to give you new attitudes and thoughts” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **to put on the new man that is created in the image of God** - Paul is speaking of moral qualities as if they were pieces of clothing. AT: “to live your new life, which is created in the image of God” or “to start living in the new way because you were created in the image of God” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **in true righteousness and holiness** - “truly righteous and holy”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 04 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 04 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 4:25-27

UDB:

²⁵ Therefore, quit lying to one another. As the scripture says, “Speak truthfully to one another because we now are each other’s fellow believers.” We now belong to one another in God’s family. ²⁶ If you get angry, do not let your anger become sin. Before the end of the day, stop being angry ²⁷ so that you will not allow the devil to attack you.

ULB:

²⁵ Therefore, get rid of lies, and let each one of you speak truth with his neighbor, because we are members of one another. ²⁶ Be angry and do not sin. Do not let the sun go down on your anger. ²⁷ Do not give an opportunity to the devil.

translationWords:

- true, truth, come true
- neighbor
- angry, anger
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Satan, devil, evil one

translationNotes:

- **get rid of lies** - “stop telling lies”
- **we are members of one another** - “we belong to one another” or “we are members of God’s family”
- **Be angry and do not sin** - “You may get angry, but do not sin” or “If you become angry, do not sin”
- **Do not let the sun go down on your anger** - “You must stop being angry before night comes” or “Let go of your anger before the day ends” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **Do not give an opportunity to the devil** - “Do not give the devil an opportunity to lead you into sin”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 04 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 04 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 4:28-30

UDB:

²⁸ Those who have been stealing must not steal any longer. Instead, they must work hard to earn their living by their own efforts, so that they may have something to give to those who are needy. ²⁹ Do not use foul language. Instead, say good things that will help people when they need help, things that help those who hear. ³⁰ Do not make the Holy Spirit of God sad by how you live. He has promised that God will one day rescue us from this world of evil.

ULB:

²⁸ The one who had been stealing must steal no longer. He must labor, doing useful work with his hands, so that he may have something to share with the those who are in need. ²⁹ Do not let any filthy talk come out of your mouth. Use only words that are helpful for building others up, according to their needs, that your words would be helpful to those who hear you. ³⁰ And do not grieve the Holy Spirit of God, for it is by him that you were sealed for the day of redemption.

translationWords:

- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord](#)
- [God](#)
- [redeem, redemption, redeemer](#)

translationNotes:

- **filthy talk** - This refers to speech that is cruel or rude.
- **for building others up** - “for encouraging others” or “for strengthening others”
- **their needs, that your words would be helpful to those who hear you** - “their needs. In this way you will help those who hear you”
- **do not grieve** - “do not distress” or “do not upset”
- **for it is by him that you were sealed for the day of redemption** - The Holy Spirit assures believers that God will redeem them. Paul speaks of the Holy Spirit as if he were a mark that God puts on believers to show that he owns them. AT: “for he is the seal that assures you that God will redeem you on the day of redemption” or “for he is the one who assures you that God will redeem you on the day of redemption” or (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 04 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 04 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 4:31-32

UDB:

³¹ Do not be resentful at all toward others. Do not become angry in any way or shout abusively at others. Never slander others. Never plan evil toward others. ³² Be kind to one another. Act mercifully toward each other. Forgive each other, just like God forgave you because of what Christ has done.

ULB:

³¹ Put away all bitterness, rage, anger, quarreling, and insults, along with every kind of evil. ³² Be kind to each other, tenderhearted, forgiving one another, just as God in Christ forgave you.

translationWords:

- [angry, anger](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [forgive, forgiveness](#)

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul finishes his instructions on what believers should not do and ends with what they must do.
- **You must put away** - Possible meanings are 1) you must do it yourself or 2) “You must allow God to take away.”
- **put away all bitterness** - “stop being angry about the bad things others have done to you”
- **rage** - times of intense anger
- **anger** - the more general term for anger
- **Be kind** - “Instead, you must be kind”
- **tenderhearted** - “gentle” or “full of compassion”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 04 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 04 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 5 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations of the Old Testament. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 5:13, which is a reference to the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

Inheritance of the kingdom of Christ

This is a difficult concept to understand. Because all of these sins can be forgiven, it should be obvious the inheritance talked about here is not eternal life. Some scholars though believe those who continue to practice these things will not inherit eternal life. It seems to be more natural to see “inheriting the kingdom” as referencing a future kingdom. (See: [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#) and [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heritage](#), [heir](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Wives, submit to your husbands

Scholars are divided over how to understand this passage in light of its historical and cultural context. Some scholars believe men and women are perfectly equal in all things (known as “egalitarianism”). Other scholars believe men and women were created to distinct and to serve in different roles in marriage and the church (known as “complementarianism”). One understanding of this issue will likely affect how this passage is translated.

Links:

- [Ephesians 05:01 Notes](#)

Ephesians 5:1-2

UDB:

¹ Imitate God because he loves us, because you are his children. ² Live by loving others just like Christ loved us when he gave himself up on the cross as the offering and sacrifice to God for our sins, which was very pleasing to God.

ULB:

5 ¹ Therefore be imitators of God, as dearly loved children. ² And walk in love, as also Christ loved us and gave himself up for us, a fragrant offering and sacrifice to God.

translationWords:

- [God](#)
- [beloved](#)
- [love](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul continues to tell the believers how they should and should not live as God's children.
- **Therefore be imitators of God** - "Therefore you should do what God does." Therefore refers back to [4:32](#) which tells why believers should imitate God, because Christ forgave believers.
- **as dearly loved children** - God desires us to imitate or follow him since we are his children. AT: "as children dearly loved children imitate their fathers" or "because you are his children and he loves you dearly" (See: [Simile](#))
- **walk in love** - Walking is a common way to express the idea of living one's life. AT: "live a life of love" (See: [Personification](#))
- **a fragrant offering and sacrifice to God** - "like a sweet-smelling offering and sacrifice to God"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 05 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 05 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 5:3-4

UDB:

³ Do not suggest any kind of immoral act and do not desire what others have or wrong things others do. Such sins can cause people to say bad things about God's people, who are together set apart for God, not for sin. ⁴ Do not tell obscene stories to others or say foolish things or joke about committing sins. Such things are not what people who belong to God talk about. Instead, thank God for his love when you talk to others.

ULB:

³ But there must not be even a suggestion among you of sexual immorality or any kind of impurity or of greed, for these are improper for God's holy people. ⁴ Let there be no filthiness, no foolish talk, and no crude jokes—all of which are improper. Instead there should be thanksgiving.

translationWords:

- [sexual immorality](#)
- [believer](#)

translationNotes:

- **But there must not be even a suggestion among you of sexual immorality or any kind of impurity or of greed** - "Do not do anything that would let anyone think that you are guilty of sexual immorality or any kind of impurity or greed"
- **any kind of impurity** - "any moral uncleanness"
- **Instead there should be thanksgiving** - "Instead you should thank God"

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 05 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 05 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 5:5-7

UDB:

⁵ You can be sure of this: No person who is sexually immoral or indecent, or who is greedy (for this is the same as worshiping idols) will be among God's people over whom Christ rules as king. ⁶ Do not let anyone deceive you with false arguments. Because they do these sinful things, God will be angry with the people who disobey him.

⁷ So do not join with those who do these kinds of sins.

ULB:

⁵ For you can be sure of this, that no sexually immoral, impure, or greedy person—that is, an idolater—has any inheritance in the kingdom of Christ and God. ⁶ Let no one deceive you with empty words, for because of these things the anger of God is coming upon the sons of disobedience.

⁷ Therefore, do not join in with them.

translationWords:

- [sexual immorality](#)
- [idol, idolatrous](#)
- [inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [disobey, disobedient, disobedience](#)

translationNotes:

- **inheritance** - Receiving what God has promised believers is spoken of as if it were inheriting property and wealth from a family member. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **empty words** - words that have no truth to them

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 05 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 05 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 5:8-12

UDB:

⁸ Before you believed in the Lord Jesus, you were living in sinful disobedience, as if a dark night surrounded you all the time. But now live in the light of the Lord. ⁹ Like light produces good things, so also those who live in the light of Jesus know and do what is good, right, and true. ¹⁰ Test and find out what pleases the Lord. ¹¹ Do not participate together with those who are doing the worthless deeds done in spiritual darkness. Instead, just say, “Those sinful acts are worthless,” ¹² because the evil things people do in the secret of darkness are too shameful to describe in the light.

ULB:

⁸ For you were once darkness, but now you are light in the Lord. Walk as children of light, ⁹ (for the fruit of the light consists in all goodness, righteousness, and truth) ¹⁰ and find out what is pleasing to the Lord. ¹¹ Do not associate with the unfruitful works of darkness, but rather expose them. ¹² For it is shameful even to mention the things they do in secret.

translationWords:

- darkness
- light
- good, goodness
- righteous, righteousness
- true, truth, come true

translationNotes:

- **For you were once darkness** - Just as one cannot see in the dark, so people who love to sin lack spiritual understanding. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **but now you are light in the Lord** - Just as one can see in the light, so people whom God has saved understand how to please God. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Walk as children of light** - “Live as people who understand what the Lord wants them to do” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the fruit of the light consists in all goodness, righteousness, and truth** - Just as a healthy tree produces good fruit, a believer will do what is good, do the righteous things God wants him to do, and will speak true words. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Do not associate with the unfruitful works of darkness** - Paul speaks of the useless, sinful things that unbelievers do as if they are evil deeds people do in the dark so no one will see them. AT: “Do not do useless, sinful things with unbelievers” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **unfruitful works** - actions that do nothing good, useful, or profitable (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **expose them** - “bring them out into the light” or “uncover them” or “show and tell people how wrong these actions are” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 05 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 05 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 5:13-14

UDB:

¹³ Everything that light exposes can then be clearly seen and better understood ¹⁴ because the light shows what it truly is. It is like when God's word explains the sins that destroy people and Jesus who forgives and renews people. So believers say,

”Wake up from your sleep
and arise from living like dead people.
Christ will enable you to understand
his forgiveness and new life.”

ULB:

¹³ But when anything is illuminated by the light, it becomes visible. ¹⁴ For anything that becomes visible is light. Therefore it says,

”Awake, you sleeper,
and arise from the dead ones,
and Christ will shine on you.”

translationWords:

- light
- death, die, dead
- Christ, Messiah

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - It is unknown if this quotation is a combination of quotations from the prophet Isaiah or a quotation from a hymn sung by the believers.
- **anything that becomes visible is light** - “people can clearly see everything that comes into the light.” While this is a metaphor for how the word of God shows people's actions to be good or bad, you should translate this literally. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Awake, you sleeper, and arise from the dead ones** - Possible meanings are 1) Paul is addressing unbelievers who need to wake up from being dead spiritually just as a person who has died must come alive again in order to respond, or 2) Paul is addressing the Ephesian believers and using death as a metaphor for their spiritual weakness. (See: [Apostrophe](#) and [Metaphor](#))

- **you sleeper ... shine on you** - These instances of “you” refer to the “sleeper” and are singular. (See: [Forms of You](#))
- **Christ will shine on you** - Christ will enable an unbeliever to understand how evil his deeds are and how Christ will forgive him and give him new life, just as light shows what actually is there that darkness hid. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 05 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 05 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 5:15-17

UDB:

¹⁵ So be very careful how you live. Do not behave as foolish people do. Instead, behave as wise people do. ¹⁶ Use the time you have on earth wisely because the days here are filled with evil. ¹⁷ So do not be foolish. Instead, understand what the Lord Jesus wants you to do, and do it!

ULB:

¹⁵ Look carefully how you live—not as unwise but as wise. ¹⁶ Redeem the time because the days are evil. ¹⁷ Therefore, do not be foolish, but understand what the will of the Lord is.

translationWords:

- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [redeem, redemption, redeemer](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [fool, foolish, folly](#)
- [will of God](#)

translationNotes:

- **Look carefully how you live—not as unwise but as wise** - Unwise people do not guard themselves against sin. However wise people can identify sin and flee from it. AT: “Therefore you must be careful to live as a wise person rather than a foolish person” (See: [Double Negatives](#) and [Parallelism](#))
- **Redeem the time** - “Do the best things you can with your time,” “Use time wisely,” or “Put time to its best use” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **because the days are evil** - The word “days” is a metonym for what people do during those days. AT: “because the people around you are doing all kinds of evil things” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 05 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 05 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 5:18-21

UDB:

¹⁸ Do not become drunk by drinking alcoholic drinks, which can ruin your life. Instead, let God's Spirit control what you do at all times. ¹⁹ Sing to each other Psalms, and sing songs about Christ, and sing songs that God's Spirit gives you. Sing these Psalms and other songs from your hearts to praise the Lord Jesus. ²⁰ At all times thank God the Father for everything because of what the Lord Jesus Christ has done for you. ²¹ Humbly submit yourselves to each other because you honor Christ.

ULB:

¹⁸ And do not get drunk with wine, for that leads to reckless behavior. Instead, be filled with the Holy Spirit, ¹⁹ speaking to each other in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, singing and making melody to the Lord with all your heart, ²⁰ always giving thanks for everything, in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ to God the Father, ²¹ submitting yourselves to one another in reverence for Christ.

translationWords:

- wine, wineskin, new wine
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord
- psalm
- spirit, spiritual
- praise
- heart
- Lord
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- God the Father, heavenly Father, Father

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul ends his instructions on how all believers should live.
- **And do not get drunk with wine** - "And you should not get drunk from drinking wine"
- **Instead, be filled with the Holy Spirit** - "Instead you should be controlled with the Holy Spirit"
- **psalms and hymns and spiritual songs** - Possible meanings are that 1) Paul is using these words as a merism for "all sorts of songs to praise God" or 2) Paul is listing specific forms of music. (See: [Merism](#))
- **psalms** - Possible meanings are 1) quotations from the Book of Psalms or 2) any worship song.
- **hymns** - songs that praise the Father or the Son

- **spiritual songs** - Possible meanings are 1) these are songs about God or 2) these are songs given by the Holy Spirit or 3) this word is the same as “hymns” and needs no separate word.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 05 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 05 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 5:22-24

UDB:

22-23 Wives should submit to their own husband's leadership as they do to the Lord Jesus, because the husband is the leader of the wife as also Christ is the leader of the worldwide assembly of believers. He is the Savior who has saved all believers from being condemned for their sins. ²⁴ Just as all believers submit themselves to the authority of Christ, the women must submit themselves completely to the authority of their husbands.

ULB:

²² Wives, submit to your husbands, as to the Lord. ²³ For the husband is the head of the wife as Christ also is the head of the church, and Christ himself is its savior. ²⁴ But as the church submits to Christ, so also wives must submit to their husbands in everything.

translationWords:

- [Lord](#)
- [Christ, Messiah](#)
- [church, Church](#)
- [Savior](#)

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul begins to explain how Christians are to submit themselves to one another ([5:21](#)). He starts with instructions to wives and husbands on how they should act toward each other.
- **the head of the wife ... the head of the church** - The word "head" represents the leader. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 05 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 05 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 5:25-27

UDB:

²⁵ Each of you husbands, love your wife as Christ loved all believers and gave up his own life for us on the cross, ²⁶ so that he might set us apart for himself. By the power of his word Jesus purified believers by removing the punishment for our sins, as if he had washed us with water. ²⁷ Now Christ can present all believers to himself as a completely clean, forgiven, faultless group, without sin.

ULB:

²⁵ Husbands, love your wives, as Christ loved the church and gave himself up for her. ²⁶ Christ gave himself for the church so that he might make her holy, having cleansed her by the washing of water with the word, ²⁷ so that he might present her to himself as glorious, without stain or wrinkle or any such thing, but holy and without fault.

translationWords:

- love
- Christ, Messiah
- church, Church
- holy, holiness
- clean, cleanse
- glory, glorious

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Here the words “himself” and “he” refer to Christ. The word “her” refers to the church.
- **love your wives** - Here “love” refers to unselfish serving or giving love to wives.
- **gave himself up** - “allowed people to kill him”
- **having cleansed her by the washing of water with the word** - Possible meanings are 1) Paul is referring to God’s making Christ’s people clean by God’s word and through water baptism in Christ or 2) Paul is saying God made us spiritually clean from our sins by the word of God as we make our bodies clean by washing with water. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **for her ... make her holy ... cleansed her** - Paul speaks of the assembly of believers as though it were a woman whom Jesus will marry. AT: “for us ... make us holy ... cleansed us” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **without stain or wrinkle** - Paul speaks of the church as though it were a garment that is clean and in good condition. He uses the same idea in two ways to emphasize the church’s purity. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Doublet](#))

- **holy and without fault** - The phrase “without fault” means basically the same thing as “holy.” Paul uses the two together to emphasize the church’s purity. (See: [Doublet](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 05 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 05 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 5:28-30

UDB:

²⁸ Each man should love his wife as he loves his own body. When men love their wives, it is as though they loved themselves, **29-30** because no one ever hated his own body. Instead, he feeds his own body and cares for it, just like Christ also cares for all us believers in his worldwide assembly. We have become one group of believers that belongs to him.

ULB:

²⁸ In the same way husbands ought to love their own wives as their own bodies. He who loves his own wife loves himself. ²⁹ For no one ever hated his own body, but nourishes and treats it with care, just as Christ nourishes and treats the church with care, ³⁰ because we are members of his body.

translationWords:

- [love](#)
- [Christ, Messiah](#)
- [church, Church](#)

translationNotes:

- **as their own bodies** - That people love their own bodies may be stated explicitly. AT: “as husbands love their own bodies” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **but nourishes** - “but feeds”
- **we are members of his body** - Possible meanings are 1) “we are members of his body of believers” or 2) believers fit together to form the body of Christ just as the parts of the human body fit together to form a person. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 05 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 05 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 5:31-33

UDB:

³¹ The scriptures say this about people who marry:

“When a man and a woman marry, they should permanently leave their fathers and mothers. They should be joined as husband and wife, and the two of them will become as though they were one person.”

³² It is difficult to understand the meaning of these things that God has now revealed, but I am telling you about Christ’s love for his worldwide assembly of believers. ³³ However, as for you, each man must love his wife just as he loves himself, and each woman must respect her husband.

ULB:

³¹ “For this reason a man will leave his father and mother and will be joined to his wife, and the two will become one flesh.” ³² This hidden truth is great—but I am speaking about Christ and the church. ³³ Nevertheless, each of you also must love his own wife as himself, and the wife must respect her husband.

translationWords:

- [flesh](#)
- [mystery, hidden truth](#)
- [Christ, Messiah](#)
- [church, Church](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The quotation is from the writings of Moses in the Old Testament.
- **General Information:** - The words “his” and “himself” refer to a male believer who marries.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 05 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 05 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 6 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Slavery

This passage does not condone slavery as an acceptable practice. Paul's teaching on slavery would have been rather radical during his time because masters were not expected to treat their slaves in such a pleasant way. Overall, Paul's focus is on living in a way that pleases God despite the circumstances of one's life. Remember, Paul is in prison when he writes these words.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Armor of God

This is an extended metaphor describing how a Christian can protect themselves from spiritual "attacks" in their daily life. (See: [spirit](#), [spiritual](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Ephesians 06:01 Notes](#)

Ephesians 6:1-3

UDB:

¹ You children, because you belong to the Lord Jesus, obey your parents, because it is right for you to do that. ² God commanded in the scriptures,

“Greatly respect your father and mother.” That is the first law that God commanded in which he also promised something. He promised,

³ “If you do that, you will prosper, and you will live a long time on the earth.”

ULB:

6 ¹ Children, obey your parents in the Lord, for this is right. ² “Honor your father and mother” (which is the first commandment with promise), ³ “so that it may be well with you and you may live long on the earth.”

translationWords:

- [obey, obedient, obedience](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [honor, to honor](#)
- [ancestor, father, forefather](#)
- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [promise](#)

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul continues to explain how Christians are to submit themselves to each other. He gives instructions to children, fathers, workers, and masters.
- **General Information:** - The first word “your” is plural. Then Paul quotes Moses. Moses was talking to the people of Israel as though they were one person, so “your” and “you” are singular. You may need to translate them as plurals. (See: [Forms of You](#))
- **Children, obey your parents in the Lord** - Paul reminds children to obey their physical parents.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 06 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 06 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 6:4

UDB:

⁴ You parents, do not treat your children so severely that they become angry. Instead, bring them up well by instructing them and by disciplining them in the manner that the Lord Jesus wants you to do.

ULB:

⁴ Fathers, do not provoke your children to anger. Instead, raise them in the discipline and instruction of the Lord.

translationWords:

- [ancestor, father, forefather](#)
- [angry, anger](#)
- [discipline, self-discipline](#)
- [Lord](#)

translationNotes:

- **do not provoke your children to anger** - “do not make your children angry” or “do not cause your children to be angry”
- **raise them in the discipline and instruction of the Lord** - “help them grow in the training and teaching of the Lord”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 06 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 06 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 6:5-8

UDB:

⁵ You slaves, obey those who are your masters here on the earth. Obey them very respectfully and sincerely just like you obey Christ. ⁶ Obey them not only when they are watching you. Instead, obey them as though you were slaves of Christ, not slaves of your masters. Do enthusiastically what God wants you to do. ⁷ Happily serve your masters, as you would serve the Lord Jesus, not as you would serve ordinary people. ⁸ Do this because you know that one day the Lord Jesus will reward each person for whatever good deeds that person has done. It makes no difference whether that person was slave or free.

ULB:

⁵ Slaves, be obedient to your earthly masters with deep respect and trembling, in the honesty of your heart. Be obedient to them as you would be obedient to Christ. ⁶ Be obedient not only when your masters are watching in order to please them. Instead, be obedient as slaves of Christ, who do the will of God from your heart. ⁷ Serve with all your heart, as though you were serving the Lord and not people, ⁸ because we know that for whatever good deed each person does, he will receive a reward from the Lord, whether he is slave or free.

translationWords:

- servant, slave, slavery
- obey, obedient, obedience
- lord, master, sir
- heart
- Christ, Messiah
- will of God
- Lord
- works, deeds, work, acts
- reward

translationNotes:

- **be obedient to** - “obey.” This is a command.
- **deep respect and trembling** - The phrase “deep respect and trembling” uses two similar words to emphasize the idea of honor and their attitude and reaction. (See: **Doublet** and **Idiom**)
- **trembling** - “as though you were shaking with fear” (See: **Hyperbole**)
- **in the honesty of your heart** - “being completely honest”

- **as slaves of Christ** - Serve your earthly master as though your earthly master were Christ himself.
- **Serve with all your heart, as though you were serving the Lord and not people** - “work joyfully, since you are working for the Lord and not only pleasing people”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 06 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 06 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 6:9

UDB:

⁹ You masters, just like your slaves should serve you well, you must treat them well. Stop threatening them. Do not forget that the one who is their Lord and your Lord is in heaven. He judges whether you have done right without preferring one person over another.

ULB:

⁹ Masters, treat your slaves in the same way. Do not threaten them. You know that he who is both their Master and yours is in heaven, and there is no favoritism with him.

translationWords:

- [lord, master, sir](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)

translationNotes:

- **treat your slaves in the same way** - “you also must treat your slaves well” or ”just as slaves must do good to their masters, you also must do good to your slaves (See: [6:5](#))
- **You know that he who is both their Master and yours is in heaven** - “You know that Christ is the Master of both slaves and their masters, and that he is in heaven”
- **there is no favoritism with him** - “he judges everyone the same way”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 06 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 06 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 6:10-11

UDB:

¹⁰ Finally, rely completely on the Lord Jesus to strengthen you spiritually by his own mighty power.

¹¹ Just like a soldier puts on all his armor, you should use every resource from God to successfully resist the devil when he cleverly schemes against you.

ULB:

¹⁰ Finally, be strong in the Lord and in the strength of his might. ¹¹ Put on the whole armor of God, so that you may be able to stand against the scheming plans of the devil.

translationWords:

- Lord
- mighty, might
- armor
- God
- Satan, devil, evil one

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul gives instructions to make believers strong in this battle we live for God.
- **the strength of his might** - “his great power.” See how “the strength of his power” is translated near the end of [1:21](#).
- **Put on the whole armor of God, so that you may be able to stand against the scheming plans of the devil** - Christians should use all the resources God gives to stand firmly against the devil just as a soldier puts on armor to protect himself from enemy attacks. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the scheming plans** - “the tricky plans”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 06 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 06 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 6:12-13

UDB:

¹² We are not fighting against other humans, but instead we are battling against all kinds of demonic rulers and evil spirits who live in spiritual darkness. ¹³ Therefore, just as a soldier puts on all his armor, so also you must put on all of the armor of God so that you can stand against evil in this time of evil on earth. With God's armor, you can fight against attacks of evil and live for God.

ULB:

¹² For our struggle is not against flesh and blood. Instead, it is against the governments and spiritual authorities and rulers of the realm of evil darkness, against the evil spirits in heavenly places. ¹³ Therefore put on the whole armor of God, so that you may be able to stand in this time of evil, and after you have done everything, to stand firm.

translationWords:

- flesh
- blood
- spirit, spiritual
- authority
- ruler, rulers, rule
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- armor
- God

translationNotes:

- **flesh and blood** - This expression refers to people, not spirits who do not have human bodies. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **Therefore put on the whole armor of God** - Christians should use the protective resources God gives them in fighting the devil in the same way a soldier puts on armor to protect himself against his enemies. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **so that you may be able to stand in this time of evil** - The words "stand firm" represent successfully resisting or fighting something. AT: "so that you may be able to resist evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 06 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 06 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 6:14-16

UDB:

¹⁴ Stand firm as a soldier is on guard. Wear truth like the soldier fastens his belt around his waist; and as he puts on a breastplate, you put on your breastplate by doing what God has commanded you to do. ¹⁵ Just as soldiers put on their boots, be ready to go anywhere you are needed for the sake of the gospel. You carry the gospel with you everywhere you go, and you bring peace with you everywhere. ¹⁶ As the soldier takes up a shield for protection, so you take up the shield of faith, and that shield will put out the flaming darts that the evil one will shoot at you. Your shield will protect you.

ULB:

¹⁴ Stand, therefore, after you have put on the belt of truth and the breastplate of righteousness. ¹⁵ Then as shoes for your feet, put on the readiness to proclaim the gospel of peace. ¹⁶ In all circumstances take up the shield of faith, by which you will be able to put out all the flaming arrows of the evil one.

translationWords:

- true, truth, come true
- righteous, righteousness
- proclaim, proclamation
- good news, gospel
- peace, peaceful
- faith
- Satan, devil, evil one

translationNotes:

- **Stand, therefore** - The words “stand” represents successfully resisting or fighting something. See how you translated “stand firm” in 6:13. “So resist evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the belt of truth** - Truth holds everything together for a believer just as a belt holds the clothing of a soldier together. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **truth ... righteousness** - We are to know the truth and act in ways that please God.
- **the breastplate of righteousness** - Possible meanings are 1) the gift of righteousness covers a believer’s heart just as a breastplate protects the chest of a soldier or 2) our living as God wants us, gives us a clear conscience that protects our hearts the way a breastplate protects a soldier’s chest. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Then as shoes for your feet, put on the readiness to proclaim the gospel of peace** - Just as a soldier wears shoes to give him solid footing, the believer must have solid knowledge of the gospel of peace in order to be ready to proclaim it. (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **In all circumstances take up the shield of faith** - The believer must use the faith that God gives for protection when the devil attacks, just as a soldier uses a shield to protect him from enemy attacks. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the flaming arrows of the evil one** - The attacks of the devil against a believer are like flaming arrows shot at a soldier by an enemy. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 06 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 06 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 6:17-18

UDB:

¹⁷ As the soldier puts on a helmet to protect his head, your helmet of protection is your salvation. The soldier has a sword, but your sword is the word of God, which is “the sword of the Spirit.” ¹⁸ And let God’s Spirit direct you in how you pray and what you pray for. Keep praying to God at all times and keep asking God to meet the needs that other people have. If you are going to be effective in your prayers, you must keep spiritually alert. Take special care to pray for all God’s holy people.

ULB:

¹⁷ And take the helmet of salvation and the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God. ¹⁸ With every prayer and request, pray at all times in the Spirit. With this mind, always be watching with all perseverance, as you offer prayers for all God’s holy people.

translationWords:

- salvation
- sword
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- pray, prayer
- persevere, perseverance
- believer

translationNotes:

- **And take the helmet of salvation** - Salvation given by God protects the believer’s mind just as a helmet protects the head of a soldier. (See: **Metaphor**)
- **the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God** - The word of God, inspired by the Holy Spirit, is to be used to fight against and defend the believer from the devil just as a soldier uses his sword to fight and defend against enemy attacks. (See: **Metaphor**)
- **With every prayer and request, pray at all times in the Spirit** - “Pray at all times in the Spirit as you pray and make specific requests”
- **With this mind** - “So that you can pray this way.” This refers to the attitude of taking God’s armor.
- **be watching with all perseverance, as you offer prayers for all God’s holy people.** - “persevere in being alert, and pray for all God’s holy people” or “pray with constant alertness for all the believers”

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 06 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 06 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 6:19-20

UDB:

¹⁹ And pray for me. Pray that God will tell me what I should say whenever I speak, in order that I may boldly tell others the good news about Christ. People did not know that message before, but God has now revealed it to me. ²⁰ I am a representative of Christ because of that, here in prison. Pray that when I tell others about Christ, I may speak without being afraid, because that is how I ought to speak.

ULB:

¹⁹ And pray for me, that a message might be given to me when I open my mouth. Pray that I might make known with boldness the hidden truth about the gospel. ²⁰ It is for the gospel that I am an ambassador who is kept in chains, so that I may declare it boldly, as I ought to speak.

translationWords:

- pray, prayer
- know, knowledge, make known
- bold, boldly, boldness
- mystery, hidden truth
- good news, gospel
- ambassador, representative

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - In his closing, Paul asks them to pray for his boldness in telling the gospel while he is in prison and says he is sending Tychicus to comfort them.
- **that a message might be given to me** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “that God might give me the word” or “God might give me the message” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **when I open my mouth. Pray that I might make known with boldness** - “when I speak. Pray that I boldly explain”
- **open my mouth** - “speak” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **It is for the gospel that I am an ambassador who is kept in chains** - “I am now in prison because I am a representative of the gospel” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **so that I may declare it boldly, as I ought to speak** - The word “pray” is understood from verse 19. AT: “so pray that whenever I teach the gospel, I will speak it boldly as I should” or “pray that I may speak the gospel boldly as I should” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 06 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 06 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 6:21-22

UDB:

²¹ In order that you may know about what is happening to me and what I am doing, I am sending Tychicus to you with this letter. He will tell you everything that is happening here. He is a fellow believer whom we all love very much, and he serves the Lord Jesus faithfully. ²² That is the reason that I am sending him to you; I want you to know how my companions and I are. I want him to comfort and encourage you.

ULB:

²¹ Tychicus, the beloved brother and faithful servant in the Lord, will tell you everything, so that you may know how I am doing. ²² I have sent him to you for this very purpose, so that you may know how we are, and so that he may encourage your hearts.

translationWords:

- [beloved](#)
- [brother](#)
- [faithful, faithfulness](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [heart](#)

translationNotes:

- **Tychicus** - Tychicus was one of several men who served with Paul. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 06 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 06 Translation Questions](#)

Ephesians 6:23-24

UDB:

²³ I pray that God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ may cause all of you fellow believers to have inner peace, to love each other, and to have faith in God. ²⁴ May God give his grace to all people who love our Lord Jesus Christ without ceasing.

ULB:

²³ Peace be to the brothers, and love with faith from God the Father and the Lord Jesus Christ. ²⁴ May grace be with all those who love our Lord Jesus Christ with a love that never dies.

translationWords:

- [peace, peaceful](#)
- [brother](#)
- [love](#)
- [faith](#)
- [God the Father, heavenly Father, Father](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
- [grace, gracious](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul closes his letter to the Ephesian believers with a blessing of peace and grace on all believers who love Christ.

Links:

- [Introduction to Ephesians](#)
- [Ephesians 06 General Notes](#)
- [Ephesians 06 Translation Questions](#)

translationQuestions

Ephesians 1

Q? How does Paul describe the people he is writing to in this letter?

A. Paul describes the people he is writing to as set apart for God, and as faithfully trusting in Christ Jesus. [1:1]

Q? With what has God the Father blessed believers?

A. God the Father has blessed believers with every spiritual blessing in the heavenly places in Christ. [1:3]

Q? When did God the Father choose those who believe in Christ?

A. God the Father chose those who believe in Christ before the creation of the world. [1:4]

Q? For what purpose did God the Father choose the believers?

A. God the Father chose the believers so they could be holy and blameless in his sight. [1:4]

Q? Why did God destine the believers in advance for adoption?

A. God destined the believers in advance because he was pleased to do it, and so that he would be praised for his glorious grace. [1:5-6]

Q? What do believers receive through the blood of Christ, God's beloved one?

A. Believers receive redemption through the blood Christ, the forgiveness of sins. [1:7]

Q? What will God do when the times for the completion of his plan come?

A. God will bring together everything in heaven and on the earth under Christ. [1:10]

Q? What seal did the believers receive when they heard the word of truth?

A. The believers received the seal of the promised Holy Spirit. [1:13]

Q? Of what is the Spirit a guarantee?

A. The Spirit is a guarantee of the inheritance of believers. [1:14]

Q? What does Paul pray the Ephesians will be enlightened to understand?

A. Paul prays that the Ephesians will be enlightened to understand the confidence of their calling. [1:18]

Q? What did the same power that now works in the believers do in Christ?

A. The same power raised Christ from the dead and seated him at God's right hand in the heavenly places. [1:20]

Q? What has God put under Christ's feet?

A. God has put all things under Christ's feet. [1:22]

Q? What is Christ's position of authority in the Church?

A. Christ is the head over all things in the Church. [1:22]

Q? What is the Church?

A. The Church is Christ's body. [1:23]

Ephesians 2

Q? What is the spiritual condition of all unbelievers?

A. All unbelievers are dead in their trespasses and sins. [2:1]

Q? Who is working in the sons of disobedience?

A. The spirit of the ruler of the authorities of the air is working in the sons of disobedience. [2:2]

Q? By nature, what are all unbelievers?

A. All unbelievers are by nature children of wrath. [2:3]

Q? Why did God bring some unbelievers to new life with Christ?

A. God brought some unbelievers to new life in Christ because of his rich mercy and great love. [2:4-5]

Q? By what have believers been saved?

A. Believers have been saved by God's grace. [2:5]

Q? Where are believers seated?

A. Believers are seated in the heavenly places with Christ Jesus. [2:6]

Q? For what purpose has God saved and raised up believers?

A. God has saved and raised up believers so that in the ages to come he might show them the great riches of his grace. [2:7]

Q? In what may no believer boast, and why?

A. No believer may boast in his works, because he is saved by grace as God's gift. [2:8-9]

Q? For what purpose has God created believers in Christ Jesus?

A. God's purpose is for believers in Christ Jesus to walk in good works. [2:10]

Q? What is the spiritual condition of unbelieving Gentiles?

A. Unbelieving Gentiles are separated from Christ, alienated from Israel, strangers to the covenants, without hope and without God. [2:12]

Q? What has brought some Gentile unbelievers near to God?

A. Some Gentile unbelievers have been brought near to God by the blood of Christ. [2:13]

Q? How did Christ change the relationship between Gentiles and Jews?

A. By his body, Christ made Gentiles and Jews one people, destroying the hostility that divided them. [2:14]

Q? What did Christ abolish in order to make peace between Jews and Gentiles?

A. Christ abolished the law of commandments and regulations in order to make peace between Jews and Gentiles. [2:15-16]

Q? By what means do all believers have access to the Father?

A. All believers have access to the Father by means of the Holy Spirit. [2:18]

Q? On what foundation is God's family built?

A. God's family is built on the foundation of the apostles and prophets, Christ Jesus being the cornerstone. [2:20]

Q? What does the power of Jesus do with the whole building of his family?

A. The power of Jesus fits together and increases the whole building of his family. [2:21]

Q? What kind of building is the building of God's family?

A. The building of God's family is a temple set apart for the Lord. [2:21]

Q? Where does God dwell in the Spirit?

A. God dwells in the Spirit within the believer. [2:22]

Ephesians 3

Q? For whose benefit did God give Paul his gift?

A. God gave Paul his gift for the benefit of the Gentiles. [3:1-2]

Q? What was not made known to the human race in other generations?

A. The hidden truth about Christ was not made known in other generations. [3:3-5]

Q? To whom has God revealed what was not made known to the human race in other generations?

A. God revealed the hidden truth about Christ to his apostles and prophets. [3:5]

Q? What hidden truth has been revealed?

A. The hidden truth revealed is that the Gentiles are fellow heirs and fellow members of the body, and fellow sharers in the promise in Christ Jesus. [3:6]

Q? What gift was given to Paul?

A. The gift of God's grace was given to Paul. [3:7]

Q? About what was Paul sent to help the Gentiles understand?

A. Paul was sent to help the Gentiles understand about God's plan. [3:9]

Q? Through what will the complex wisdom of God be made known?

A. Through the Church the complex wisdom of God will be made known. [3:10]

Q? What does Paul say believers have because of faith in Christ?

A. Paul says believers have boldness and access with confidence because of faith in Christ. [3:12]

Q? What is named and created after the Father?

A. Every family in heaven and on earth is named and created after the Father. [3:14-15]

Q? How does Paul pray the believers be strengthened?

A. Paul prays the believers be strengthened with power through God's Spirit. [3:16]

Q? What does Paul pray the believers will be able to understand?

A. Paul prays the believers will be able to understand how wide and long and high and deep is the love of Christ. [3:18]

Q? What does Paul pray will be given to the Father to all generations?

A. Paul prays that the glory in the Church and in Christ Jesus will be given to the Father to all generations. [3:21]

Ephesians 4

Q? How does Paul urge believers to live?

A. Paul urges believers to live with humility, gentleness, and patience, accepting each other in love. [4:1-2]

Q? What does Paul name in his list of things of which there is only one?

A. Paul says there is one body, Spirit, confident expectation, Lord, faith, baptism, and God the Father. [4:4-6]

Q? What did Christ give to each believer after his ascension?

A. Christ gave each believer a gift according to the measure of the gift of Christ. [4:7-8]

Q? What five gifts of Christ to the body does Paul name?

A. Christ gave to the body the gifts of apostles, prophets, evangelists, pastors, and teachers. [4:11]

Q? For what purpose are these five gifts to the body supposed to work?

A. The five gifts to the body are supposed to equip the believers for the work of service, for the building up of the body. [4:12]

Q? How does Paul say believers can be like children?

A. Believers can be like children by being tossed around and carried away by people's trickery and erring deceit. [4:14]

Q? How does Paul say the body of believers is constructed?

A. The body of believers fits together, held together by each joint, each part working in the body's growth, for the building up of each one in love. [4:16]

Q? How does Paul say the Gentiles walk?

A. The Gentiles are darkened in thought, separated from God, and given over to impure actions. [4:17-19]

Q? What does Paul say believers must put off and put on?

A. Believers must put off the old man, and put on the new man. [4:23-24]

Q? How can a believer give opportunity to the devil?

A. A believer can give opportunity to the devil by letting the sun go down upon his anger. [4:26-27]

Q? What must believers do instead of steal?

A. Believers must labor so that they may be able to share with the person who has need. [4:28]

Q? What kind of speech does Paul say must come out of the believer's mouth?

A. No corrupt speech must come out of the believer's mouth, but instead words that build up others. [4:29]

Q? Who must a believer not grieve?

A. A believer must not grieve the Holy Spirit. [4:30]

Q? What is a believer to do because God in Christ forgave him?

A. A believer must forgive others because God in Christ forgave him. [4:32]

Ephesians 5

Q? Who should believers imitate?

A. Believers should imitate God the Father as his children. [5:1]

Q? What did Christ do which was a pleasing aroma to God?

A. Christ gave himself up for the believers as an offering and sacrifice to God. [5:2]

Q? What must not be suggested among believers?

A. Sexual immorality, impurity, and greed must not be suggested among believers. [5:3]

Q? What attitude should instead be seen among believers?

A. Believers should instead have an attitude of thankfulness. [5:4]

Q? Who has no inheritance in the kingdom of Christ and God?

A. The sexually immoral, impure, and greedy have no inheritance in the kingdom of Christ and God. [5:5]

Q? What is coming upon the children of disobedience?

A. The anger of God is coming upon the children of disobedience. [5:6]

Q? What fruit of the light is pleasing to the Lord?

A. The fruit of goodness, righteousness, and truth is pleasing to the Lord. [5:9]

Q? What are believers to do with the works of the darkness?

A. Believers are not to participate with, but instead expose the works of darkness. [5:11]

Q? What is revealed by the light?

A. Everything is revealed by the light. [5:13]

Q? What should believers do since the days are evil?

A. Believers should redeem the time since the days are evil. [5:16]

Q? What leads to ruin?

A. Getting drunk with wine leads to ruin. [5:18]

Q? With what should believers speak to each other?

A. Believers should speak to each other with psalms, hymns, and spiritual songs. [5:19]

Q? In what way should wives be subject to their husbands?

A. Wives should be subject to their husbands as to the Lord. [5:22]

Q? Of what is the husband the head, and of what is Christ the head?

A. The husband is head of the wife, and Christ is head of the Church. [5:23]

Q? How does Christ make the Church holy?

A. Christ makes the Church holy by the washing of water by the word. [5:26-27]

Q? How should husbands love their wives?

A. Husbands should love their wives as their own bodies. [5:28]

Q? How does a person treat his own body?

A. A person nourishes and loves his own body. [5:29]

Q? What happens when a man is joined to his wife?

A. When a man is joined to his wife they become one flesh. [5:31]

Q? What hidden truth is demonstrated by the joining of a man and his wife?

A. The hidden truth about Christ and his Church is demonstrated by the joining of a man and his wife. [5:32]

Ephesians 6

Q? How should Christian children treat their parents?

A. Christian children should obey and honor their parents. [6:1-2]

Q? What are Christian fathers to do for their children?

A. Christian fathers are to raise their children in the discipline and instruction of the Lord. [6:4]

Q? With what attitude should Christian slaves obey their masters?

A. Christian slaves should obey their masters in the honesty of their heart, serving cheerfully as for the Lord. [6:5-7]

Q? What should a believer remember about whatever good deed he does?

A. A believer should remember that whatever good deed he does, he will receive a reward from the Lord. [6:8]

Q? What should a Christian master remember about his Master?

A. A Christian master should remember that his and his servant's Master is in heaven, and that there is no favoritism with him. [6:9]

Q? Why must a believer put on the whole armor of God?

A. A believer must put on the whole armor of God to stand against the wicked plans of the devil. [6:11,13,14]

Q? Against whom does a believer battle?

A. A believer battles against governments and spiritual authorities and rulers of the realm of evil darkness. [6:12]

Q? Which piece of the armor of God puts out the flaming arrows of the evil one?

A. The shield of faith puts out the flaming arrows of the evil one. [6:16]

Q? What is the sword of the Spirit?

A. The sword of the Spirit is the word of God. [6:17]

Q? What attitude must believers have in prayer?

A. Believers must pray at all times, persevering and watching for God's answer. [6:18]

Q? What does Paul wish to have through the prayers of the Ephesians?

A. Paul wishes to have the word given to him with boldness when he speaks the gospel. [6:19-20]

Q? Where is Paul as he writes this letter?

A. Paul is in prison as he writes this letter. [6:20]

Q? What three things does Paul ask that God the Father and the Lord Jesus Christ give the believers?

A. Paul asks that God will give peace, love with faith, and grace to the believers. [6:23-24]

translationWords

adoption

Definition:

The term “adoption” refers to the process of someone legally becoming the child of people who are not his biological parents.

- The Bible uses “adoption” and “adopt” in a figurative way to describe how God causes people to be part of his family, making them his spiritual sons and daughters.
- As adopted children, believers are co-heirs with Jesus Christ, having a right to all the privileges of sons and daughters of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with a term that the language of translation uses to describe this special parent-child relationship. Make sure it is understood that this has a figurative or spiritual meaning.
- The phrase, “experience adoption as sons” could be translated as, “be adopted by God as his children” or “become God’s (spiritual) children.”
- To “wait for the adoption of sons” could be translated as, “look forward to becoming God’s children” or “wait expectantly for God to
- The phrase “adopt them” could be translated as “receive them as his own children” or “make them his own (spiritual) children.”

(See: heir, inherit, inheritance, spirit, spiritual other)

Bible References:

Waiting

ambassador, representative

Definition:

An ambassador is a person who is chosen to officially represent his country in relating to foreign nations. It is also used in a figurative sense and is sometimes translated more generally as “representative.”

- An ambassador or representative gives people messages from the person or government that sent him.
- The more general term “representative” refers to someone who has been given the authority to act and speak on behalf of the person he is representing.
- The apostle Paul taught that Christians are Christ’s “ambassadors” or “representatives” since they represent Christ in this world and teach others his message.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as, “official representative” or “appointed messenger” or “chosen representative” or “God’s appointed representative.”
- A “delegation of ambassadors” could be translated as “some official messengers” or “group of appointed representatives” or “official party of people to speak for all people.”

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See: [messenger](#) other)

Bible References:

Waiting

amen, truly

Definition:

The term “amen” is a word used to emphasize or call attention to what a person has said. It is often used at the end of a prayer. Sometimes it is translated as “truly.”

- When used at the end of a prayer, “amen” communicates agreement with the prayer or expresses a desire that the prayer be fulfilled.
- In his teaching, Jesus used “amen” to emphasize the truth of what he said. He often followed that by “and I say to you” to introduce another teaching that related to the previous teaching.
- When Jesus uses “amen” this way, some English versions (and the ULB) translate this as “verily” or “truly.”
- Another word meaning “truly” is sometimes translated as “surely” or “certainly” and is also used to emphasize what the speaker is saying.

Translation Suggestions:

- Consider whether the target language has a special word or phrase that is used to emphasize something that has been said.
- When used at the end of a prayer or to confirm something, “amen” could be translated as, “let it be so” or “may this happen” or “that is true.”
- When Jesus says, “truly I tell you,” this could also be translated as, “Yes, I tell you sincerely” or “That is true, and I also tell you.”
- The phrase, “truly, truly I tell you” could be translated as “I tell you this very sincerely” or “I tell you this very earnestly” or “what I am telling you is true.”
-

(See: [fulfill](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

angry, anger

Definition:

To “be angry” or to “have anger” means to be very displeased, irritated and upset about something or against someone.

- When people get angry, it often is sinful and selfish, but sometimes it is righteous anger against injustice or oppression.
- God’s anger (also called “wrath”) expresses his strong displeasure regarding sin.
- The phrase, “provoke to anger” means “cause to be angry.”

(See also: [wrath](#), [fury](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

apostle, apostleship

Definition:

The “apostles” were men sent by Jesus to preach about God and his kingdom. The term “apostleship” refers to the position and authority of those who were chosen as apostles.

- The word “apostle” means, “someone who is sent out for a special purpose.” The apostle has the same authority as the one who sent him.
- Jesus’ twelve closest disciples became the first apostles. Other men, such as Paul and James, also became apostles.
- By God’s power, the apostles were able to boldly preach the gospel and heal people, including forcing demons to come out of people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “apostle” can also be translated with a word or phrase that means, “someone who is sent out” or “sent out one” or “person who is called to go out and preach God’s message to people.”
- It is important to translate the terms “apostle” and “disciple” in different ways from each other.
- Also consider how this term was translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [authority](#), [disciple](#), [James \(son of Zebedee\)](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#), [the twelve](#), [the eleven](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[26-10]** Then Jesus chose twelve men who were called his **apostles**. The **apostles** traveled with Jesus and learned from him.
- **[30-01]** Jesus sent his **apostles** to preach and to teach people in many different villages.
- **[38-02]** Judas was one of Jesus’ **apostles**. He was in charge of the **apostles’** money bag, but he loved money and often stole from the bag.
- **[43-13]** The disciples devoted themselves to the **apostles’** teaching, fellowship, eating together, and prayer.
- **[46-08]** Then a believer named Barnabas took Saul to the **apostles** and told them how Saul had preached boldly in Damascus.

armor**Definition:**

The term “armor” refers to the equipment a soldier uses to fight in a battle and protect himself from enemy attacks. It is also used in a figurative way to refer to spiritual armor.

- Parts of a soldier’s armor include a helmet, a shield, a breastplate, leg coverings, and a sword.
- Using the term figuratively, the apostle Paul compares physical armor to spiritual armor that God gives the believer to help him fight spiritual battles.
- The spiritual armor God gives his people to fight against sin and Satan includes truth, righteousness, the gospel of peace, faith, salvation, and the Holy Spirit.
- This could be translated with a term that means, “soldier gear” or “protective battle clothing” or “protective covering” or “weapons.”

(See also: [faith](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [peace](#), [peaceful](#), [salvation](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

authority

Definition:

The term “authority” refers to the power of influence and control that someone has over someone else.

- Kings and other governing rulers have authority over the people they are ruling.
- The word “authorities” refers to people, governments, or organizations that have authority over others.
- Masters have authority over their servants or slaves. Parents have authority over their children.
- Governments have the authority or right to make laws that govern their citizens.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “authority” can also be translated as “control” or “right” or “qualifications.”
- Sometimes “authority” is used with the meaning of “power.”
- When “authorities” is used to refer to people or organizations who rule people, it could also be translated as “leaders” or “rulers” or “powers.”
- The phrase “by his own authority” could also be translated as, “with his own right to lead” or “based on his own qualifications.”
- The expression, “under authority” could be translated as, “responsible to obey” or “having to obey others’ commands.”

(See also: [citizen](#), [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

baptize, baptism

Definition:

In the New Testament, the terms “baptize” and “baptism” usually refer to ritually bathing a Christian with water to show that he has been cleansed from sin and has been united with Christ.

- Besides water baptism, the Bible talks about being “baptized with the Holy Spirit” and “baptized with fire.”
- The term “baptism” is also used in the Bible to refer to going through great suffering.

Translation Suggestions:

- Christians have different views about how a person should be baptized with water. It is probably best to translate this term in a general way that allows for different ways of applying the water.
- Depending on the context, the term “baptize” could be translated as “purify,” “pour out on,” “plunge (or dip) into,” “wash,” or “spiritually cleanse.” For example, “baptize you with water” could be translated as, “plunge you into water.”
- The term “baptism” could be translated as, “purification,” “a pouring out,” “a dipping,” “a cleansing,” or “a spiritual washing.”
- When it refers to suffering, “baptism” could also be translated as “a time of terrible suffering” or “a cleansing through severe suffering.”
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [repent](#), [repentance](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [24-03] When people heard John’s message, many of them repented from their sins, and John **baptized** them. Many religious leaders also came to be **baptized** by John, but they did not repent or confess their sins.
- [24-06] The next day, Jesus came to be **baptized** by John.
- [24-07] John said to Jesus, “I am not worthy to **baptize** you. You should **baptize** me instead.”
- [42-10] So go, make disciples of all people groups by **baptizing** them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”

- [43-11] Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be **baptized** in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins."
- [43-12] About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were **baptized** and became part of the church at Jerusalem.
- [45-11] As Philip and the Ethiopian traveled, they came to some water. The Ethiopian said, "Look! There is some water! May I be **baptized**?"
- [46-05] Saul immediately was able to see again, and Ananias **baptized** him.
- [49-14] Jesus invites you to believe in him and be **baptized**.

believe, believe in, belief

Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

2. believe in

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as, “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”

(See also: [faith](#), [believer](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [03-04] Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- [04-08] Abram **believed** God’s promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God’s promise.
- [11-02] God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- [11-06] But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- [37-05] Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?”

believer

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “believer” refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term “believer” literally means “person who believes.”
- The term “Christian” eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some translations may prefer to say, “believer in Jesus” or “believer in Christ.”
- This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means, “person who trusts in Jesus” or “someone who knows Jesus and lives for him.”
- Other ways to translate “believer” could be, “follower of Jesus” or “person who knows and obeys Jesus.”
- The term “believer” is a general term for any believer in Christ, while “disciple” and “apostle” were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.

(See also: [apostle](#), [apostleship](#), [believe](#), [believe in](#), [Christian](#), [disciple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[43-01]** After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The **believers** there constantly gathered together to pray.
- **[43-03]** While the **believers** were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the **believers**.
- **[43-13]** Every day, more people became **believers**.
- **[45-06]** That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the **believers** fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **[46-01]** Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the **believers**.
- **[46-09]** Some **believers** who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus...It was at Antioch that **believers** in Jesus were first called “Christians.”

- [47-14] They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the **believers** in the churches.

beloved

Definition:

The term “beloved” is an expression of affection that describes someone who is loved and dear to someone else.

- The term “beloved” literally means “loved (one)” or “(who is) loved.”
- God refers to Jesus as his “beloved Son.”
- In their letters to Christian churches, the apostles frequently address their fellow believers as “beloved.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “loved” or “loved one” or “well-loved” or “very dear.”
- In the context of talking about a close friend, this could be translated as “my dear friend” or “my close friend.” In English it is natural to say, “my dear friend, Paul” or “Paul, who is my dear friend.” Other languages may find it more natural to order this in a different way.
- Note that the word “beloved” comes from the word for God’s love, which is unconditional, unselfish, and sacrificial.

(See also: [love](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

blameless**Definition:**

The term “blameless” literally means “without blame.” It is used to refer to a person who obeys God wholeheartedly, but it does not mean that the person is sinless.

- Abraham and Noah were considered blameless before God.
- A person who has a reputation for being “blameless” behaves in a way that honors God.
- According to one verse, a person who is blameless is “one who fears God and turns away from evil.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as, “with no fault to his character” or “completely obedient to God” or “avoiding sin” or “keeping away from evil.”

Bible References:

Waiting

bless, blessed, blessing

Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people ‘bless’ God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

from comment below: It is important to not define, focus on, or be confined by applications of the root word of “bless” that suggest primarily the flourishing or abundance of material things or physical wellness. Consider the extensive teachings in Scripture on God’s love, mercy and grace that is not only ancient, but current. Consider care, protection, and presence of God’s Spirit. And for us to bless God, we can offer thankfulness, appreciation, and understanding as we learn of and follow (obey) him.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as, “to provide abundantly for” or “to be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as, “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like, “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as, “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as, “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: [praise](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-07]** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **[01-15]** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **[01-16]** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **[04-04]** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **[04-07]** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”
- **[07-03]** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **[08-05]** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

blood

Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body.

- Blood symbolizes life and when it is shed or poured out, it symbolizes the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- Through his death on the cross, Jesus’ blood symbolically cleanses people from their sins and pays for the punishment they deserve for those sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See: [flesh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-03]** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **[10-03]** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **[11-05]** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb’s **blood**.
- **[13-09]** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight.
- **[38-05]** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
- **[48-10]** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s punishment passes over him.

boast, boastful

Definition:

The term “boast” means to talk proudly about something or someone. Often it means to brag about oneself.

- Someone who is “boastful” talks about himself in a proud way.
- God rebuked the Israelites for “boasting in” their idols. They arrogantly worshiped false gods instead of the true God.
- The Bible also talks about people boasting in such things as their wealth, their strength, their fruitful fields, and their laws. This means that they were proud about these things and did not acknowledge that God is the one who provided these things.
- God urged the Israelites to instead “boast” or be proud about the fact that they know him.
- The apostle, Paul also talks about boasting in the Lord, which means being glad and thankful to God for all he has done for them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “boast” could include “brag” or “talk proudly” or “be proud.”
- The term “boastful” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “full of prideful talk” or “prideful” or “talking proudly about oneself.”
- In the context of boasting in or about knowing God, this could be translated as “take pride in” or “exalt in” or “be very glad about” or “give thanks to God about.”
- Some languages have two words for “pride”: one that is negative, with the meaning of being arrogant, and the other that is positive, with the meaning of taking pride in ones’ work, family, or country.

Translation Suggestions:

(See also: [proud](#), [pride](#), [prideful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

body

Definition:

The term “body” literally refers to the physical body of a person or animal. This term is also used figuratively to refer to an object or whole group that has individual members.

- Often the term “body” refers to a dead person or animal. Sometimes this is referred to as a “dead body” or a “corpse.”
- When Jesus said to the disciples at his last Passover meal, “This (bread) is my body,” he was referring to his physical body that would be “broken” (killed) to pay for their sins.
- In the Bible, Christians as a group are referred to as the “body of Christ.”
- Just as a physical body has many parts, the “body of Christ” has many individual members.
- Each individual believer has a special function in the body of Christ to help the whole group work together to serve God and bring him glory.
- Jesus is also referred to as the “head” (leader) of the “body” of his believers. Just as a person’s head tells his body what to do, so Jesus is the one who guides and directs Christians as members of his “body.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The best way to translate this term would be with the word that is most commonly used to refer to a physical body in the project language. Make sure that the word used is not an offensive term.
- When referring collectively to believers, for some languages it may be more natural and accurate to say, “spiritual body of Christ.”
- When Jesus says, “This is my body” it is best to translate this literally, with a note to explain it if needed.
- Some languages may have a separate word when referring to a dead body, such as “corpse” for a person or “carcass” for an animal. Make sure the word used to translate this makes sense in the context and is acceptable.

(See also: [head](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

bold, boldly, boldness

Definition:

These terms all refer to having courage and confidence to speak the truth and do the right thing even when it is difficult or dangerous.

- A “bold” person is not afraid to say and do what is good and right, including defending people who are being mistreated. This could be translated as “courageous” or “fearless.”
- In the New Testament, the disciples continued to “boldly” preach about Christ in public places, in spite of the danger of being put in jail or killed. This could be translated as “confidently” or “with strong courage” or “courageously.”
- The “boldness” of these early disciples in speaking the good news of Christ’s redeeming death on the cross resulted in the gospel being spread throughout Israel and nearby countries and finally, to the rest of the world. “Boldness” could also be translated as “confident courage.”

(See also: [confidence](#), [confident](#), [good news](#), [gospel](#), [redeem](#), [redemption](#), [redeemer](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

brother

Definition:

The term “brother” usually refers to a male person who shares at least one biological parent with another person.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives, such as members of the same tribe, clan, or people group.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often used “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women, since all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include, “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as, “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be, “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [the twelve](#), [the eleven](#), [God the Father](#), [Heavenly Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

call, calling, called, call out

Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” literally means to say something loudly to someone who is not nearby. There are also several figurative meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout or speak loudly to someone far away. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- The term “called” is used in the Bible to mean that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of calling someone a name. For example, “He is called John,” means, “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God knows a person’s name personally and has specifically chosen him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as, “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as, “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as, “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as, “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as, “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as, “I know your name and have chosen you.”

(See: [pray](#), [prayer](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

{{tag>publish ktlink}}

Christ, Messiah

Facts:

The terms “Messiah” and “Christ” mean “Anointed One” and refer to Jesus, God’s Son.

- Both “Messiah” and “Christ” are used in the New Testament to refer to God’s Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning “anointed (one)” is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proved he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word “Christ” is often used as a title, as in “the Christ” and “Christ Jesus.”
- “Christ” also came to be used as part of his name, as in “Jesus Christ.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using its meaning, “the Anointed One” or “God’s Anointed Savior.”
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like “Christ” or “Messiah.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, “Christ, the Anointed One.”
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of “Messiah” and “Christ” work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#), [David](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [anoint](#), [anointed](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-07]** The **Messiah** was God’s Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- **[17-08]** As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the **Messiah** came, almost 1,000 years.

- [21-01] From the very beginning, God planned to send the **Messiah**.
- [21-04] God promised King David that the **Messiah** would be one of David's own descendants.
- [21-05] The **Messiah** would start the New Covenant.
- [21-06] God's prophets also said that the **Messiah** would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.
- [21-09] The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the **Messiah** would be born from a virgin.
- [43-07] "But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, "You will not let your **Holy One** rot in the grave."
- [43-09] "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and **Messiah!**"
- [43-11] Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus **Christ** so that God will forgive your sins."
- [46-06] Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the **Messiah**.

church, Church

Definition:

In the New Testament, the term “church” refers to a local group of believers in Jesus who regularly met together to pray and hear God’s word preached. The term “the Church” often refers to all Christians.

- This term literally refers to a “called out” assembly or congregation of people who meet together for a special purpose.
- When this term is used to refer to all believers everywhere in the whole body of Christ, some Bible translations capitalize the first letter (“Church”) to distinguish it from the local church.
- Often the believers in a particular city would meet together in someone’s home. These local churches were given the name of the city such as the “church at Ephesus.”
- In the Bible, “church” does not refer to a building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “church” could be translated as a “gathering together” or “assembly” or “congregation” or “ones who meet together.”
- The word or phrase that is used to translate this term should also be able to refer to all believers, not just one small group.
- Make sure that the translation of “church” does not just refer to a building.
- The term used to translate “assembly” in the Old Testament could also be used to translate this term.
- Also consider how it is translated in a local or national Bible translation. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#).)

(See also: [assembly](#), [assemble](#), [believer](#), [Christian](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[43-12]** About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were baptized and became part of the **church** at Jerusalem.
- **[46-09]** Most of the people in Antioch were not Jews, but for the first time, very many of them also became believers. Barnabas and Saul went there to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the **church**.
- **[46-10]** So the **church** in Antioch prayed for Barnabas and Saul and placed their hands on them. Then they sent them off to preach the good news of Jesus in many other places.

- [47-13] The good news of Jesus kept spreading, and the **Church** kept growing.
- [50-01] For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the good news about Jesus the Messiah. The **Church** has been growing.

circumcise, circumcision

Definition:

The term “circumcise” means to cut off the foreskin of a man or male child. A circumcision ceremony may be performed in connection with this.

- God commanded Abraham to circumcise every male among his family and servants as a sign of God’s covenant with them.
- God also commanded Abraham’s descendants to continue to do this for every baby boy born into their households.
- The phrase, “circumcision of the heart” refers figuratively to the “cutting away” or removal of sin from a person.
- In a spiritual sense, “the circumcised” refers to people whom God has purified from sin through the blood of Jesus and who are his people.
- The term “uncircumcised” refers to those who have not been circumcised physically. It can also refer figuratively to those who have not been circumcised spiritually, who do not have a relationship with God.

Translation Suggestions:

- If the culture of the target language performs circumcisions on males, the word used to refer to this should be used for this term.
- Other ways to translate this term would be, “cut around” or “cut in a circle” or “cut off the foreskin.”
- In cultures where circumcision is not known, it may be necessary to explain it in a footnote or glossary.
- Make sure the term used to translate this does not refer to females. It may be necessary to translate this with a word or phrase that includes the meaning of “male.”

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [uncircumcised](#), [uncircumcision](#), [covenant](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [05-03]”You must **circumcise** every male in your family.”
- [05-05] That day Abraham **circumcised** all the males in his household.

clean, cleanse

Definition:

The term “clean” literally means to not have any dirt or stain. In the Bible, it is often used figuratively to mean, “pure,” “holy,” or “free from sin.”

- “Cleanse” is the process of making something “clean.” It could also be translated as “wash” or “purify.”
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term “clean” means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared “clean” again.
- Sometimes “clean” is used figuratively to refer to moral purity.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for “clean” or “pure” (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, “ritually clean” or “acceptable to God.”
- “Cleanse” could be translated by “wash” or “purify.”
- Make sure that the words used for “clean” and “cleanse” can also be understood in a figurative sense.

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unclean](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

command, to command, commandment

Definition:

The term “to command” means to order someone to do something. A “command” or “commandment” is what the person was ordered to do.

- Although these terms have basically the same meaning, “commandment” often refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the “Ten Commandments.”
- A command can be positive (“Honor your parents”) or negative (“Do not steal”).
- To “take command” means to “take control” or “take charge” of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, “law.” Also compare with the definitions of “decree” and “statute.”
- Some translators may prefer to translate “command” and “commandment” with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See [decree](#), [statute](#), [statutes](#), [law](#), [principle](#), [Ten Commandments](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

confidence, confident

Definition:

The term “confidence” refers to being sure that something is true or certain to happen.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” often means to wait expectantly for something that is sure to happen. The ULB often translates this as “confidence” or “confidence for the future” or “future confidence” especially when it means to be assured of receiving what God has promised to believers in Jesus.
- Often the term “confidence” refers especially to the certainty that believers in Jesus have that they will someday be with God forever in heaven.
- The phrase, “have confidence in God” means to fully expect to receive and experience what God has promised.
- Being “confident” means believing in God’s promises and acting with the assurance that God will do what he has said. This term can also have the meaning of acting boldly and courageously.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “confident” could be translated as “assured” or “very sure.”
- The phrase “be confident” could also be translated as “trust completely” or “be completely sure about” or “know for certain.”
- The term “confidently” could also be translated as “boldly” or “with certainty.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confidence” could include, “complete assurance” or “sure expectation” or “certainty.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [believer](#), [bold](#), [boldly](#), [boldness](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [hope](#), [trust](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:19-22
- 1 Peter 03:15-17
- Job 04:4-6
- Philippians 01:25-27
- Proverbs 14:26-27
- Romans 05:1-2

cornerstone

Definition:

The term “cornerstone” refers to a large stone that has been specially cut and placed in the corner of the foundation of a building.

- All the other stones of the building are measured and placed in relation to the cornerstone.
- It is very important for the strength and stability of the whole structure.
- In the New Testament, the Assembly of believers is metaphorically compared to a building which has Jesus Christ as its “cornerstone.”
- In the same way that the cornerstone of a building supports and determines the position of the whole building, so Jesus Christ is the cornerstone on which the Assembly of believers is founded and supported.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “cornerstone” could also be translated as “main building stone” or “foundation stone.”
- Consider whether the target language has a term for a part of a building’s foundation that is the main support. If so, this term could be used.
- Another way to translate this would be, “a foundation stone used for the corner of a building.”
- It is important to keep the fact that this is a large stone, used as a solid and secure building material. If stones are not used for constructing buildings, there may be another word that could be used that means “large stone” (such as “boulder”) but it should also have the idea of being well-formed and made to fit.

Bible References:

Waiting

covenant

Definition:

A covenant is a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example when God established his covenant with mankind, promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “binding agreement” or “formal commitment” or “pledge” or “contract.”
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as “promise” or “pledge.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.

(See also: , [New Covenant](#), [promise](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-09]** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **[05-04]** “I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac.”
- **[06-04]** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.

- [07-10] The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob.”
- [13-02] God said to Moses and the people of Israel, ”If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation.”
- [13-04] Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods.”
- [15-13] Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.

create, creation, Creator

Definition:

The term “create” means to make something, or to cause something to be. Whatever is created is called a “creation.” God is called the “Creator” because he caused everything in the entire universe to come into existence.

- When this term is used to refer to God creating the world, it means he made it out of nothing.
- When human beings “create” something, it means they made it out of things that already existed.
- Sometimes “create” is used in a figurative way to describe something abstract, such as creating peace or creating a pure heart in someone.
- The term “creation” can refer to the very beginning of the world when God first created everything. It can also be used to refer generally to everything that God created. Sometimes the word “creation” refers more specifically to just the people in the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may have to directly say that God created the world “out of nothing” to make sure this meaning is clear.
- The phrase, “since the creation of the world” means, “since the time when God created the world.”
- A similar phrase, “at the beginning of creation” could be translated as, “when God created the world at the beginning of time” or “when the world was first created.”
- To preach the good news “to all creation” means to preach the good news “to all people everywhere on earth.”
- The phrase, “Let all creation rejoice” means, “Let everything that God created rejoice.”
- Depending on the context, “create” could be translated as, “make” or “cause to be” or “make out of nothing.”
- The term “the Creator” could be translated as, “the One who created everything” or “God, who made the whole world.”
- Phrases like “your Creator” could be translated as, “God, who created you.”

(See: [God](#), [good news](#), [gospel](#), [world](#))

Bible References:

se, “since the creation of the world” means, “since the time when God created the world was created.

Waiting

CROSS**Definition:**

In Bible times, a cross was an upright wooden post stuck into the ground, with a horizontal wooden beam attached to it near the top.

- During the time of the Roman Empire, the Roman government would execute criminals by tying or nailing them to a cross and leaving them there to die.
- Jesus was falsely accused of crimes he did not commit and the Romans put him to death on a cross.
- Note that this is a completely different word from the verb “cross” that means to go over to the other side of something, such as a river or lake.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using a term in the target language that refers to the shape of a cross.
- Consider describing the cross as something on which people were killed, using phrases such as “execution post” or “tree of death.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [crucify](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[40-01]** After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to crucify him. They made him carry the **cross** on which he would die.
- **[40-02]** The soldiers brought Jesus to a place called “the Skull” and nailed his arms and feet to the **cross**.
- **[40-05]** The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd mocked Jesus. They said to him, “If you are the Son of God, come down from the **cross** and save yourself! Then we will believe you.”
- **[49-10]** When Jesus died on the **cross**, he received your punishment.
- **[49-12]** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the **cross** instead of you, and that God raised him to life again.

darkness

Definition:

The term “darkness” literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, “darkness” means “impurity” or “evil” or “spiritual blindness.”
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression, “dominion of darkness” refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term “darkness” can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- People who do not know God are said to be “living in darkness,” which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as “outer darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, “darkness of night” (as opposed to “light of day”) or “not seeing anything, like at night” or “evil, like a dark place”.

(See also: [corrupt](#), [corruption](#), [dominion](#), [kingdom](#), [light](#), [redeem](#), [redemption](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

death, die, dead

Definition:

This term is used to refer to both physical and spiritual death. Physically, it refers to when the physical body of a person stops living. Spiritually, it refers to sinners being separated from a holy God because of their sin.

1. Physical death

- To “die” means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- A person’s spirit leaves his body when he dies.
- When Adam and Eve sinned, physical death came into the world.
- The expression “put to death” refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Spiritual death

- Spiritual death is the separation of a person from God.
- Adam died spiritually when he disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- Every descendant of Adam is a sinner, and is spiritually dead. God makes us spiritually alive again when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression that refers to death in the target language.
- In some languages, “to die” may be expressed as “to not live.” The term “dead” may be translated as “not alive” or “not having any life” or “not living.”
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as “to pass away” in English. However in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, physical life and death are often compared to spiritual life and death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and spiritual death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say “spiritual death” when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say “physical death” in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression, “the dead” is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as, “dead people” or “people who have died.” (See: nominal adjective)
- The expression, “put to death” could also be translated as, “kill” or “murder” or “execute.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faith](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-11]** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **[02-11]** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **[07-10]** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **[37-05]** "Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **[40-08]** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **[43-07]** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **[48-02]** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **[50-17]** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.
-

deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive

Definition:

The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true. The act of deceiving someone is called “deceit.”

- Another term, “deception” also refers to the act of causing someone to believe something that is not true.
- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms, “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as, “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as, “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated by “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See: [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

{{tag>publish review}}

demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit

Definition:

All these terms refer to demons, which are spirit beings that oppose God's will.

- God created angels to serve him. When the devil rebelled against God, some of the angels also rebelled and were thrown out of heaven. It is believed that demons and evil spirits are these “fallen angels.”
- Sometimes these demons are called “unclean spirits.” The term “unclean” means “impure” or “evil” or “unholy.”
- Because demons serve the devil, they do evil things. Sometimes they live inside people and control them.
- Demons are more powerful than human beings, but not as powerful as God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “demon” could also be translated as “evil spirit.”
- The term “unclean spirit” could also be translated as “impure spirit” or “corrupt spirit” or “evil spirit.”
- Make sure that the word or phrase used to translate this term is different from the term used to refer to the devil.
- Also consider how the term “demon” is translated in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [demon-possessed](#), [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [angel](#), [archangel](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [unclean](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[26-09]** Many people who had **demons** in them were brought to Jesus. When Jesus commanded them, the **demons** came out of the people, and often shouted, “You are the Son of God!”
- **[32-08]** The **demons** came out of the man and entered the pigs.
- **[47-05]** Finally one day when the slave girl started yelling, Paul turned to her and said to the **demon** that was in her, “In the name of Jesus, come out of her.” Right away the **demon** left her.
- **[49-02]** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out **demons**, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

discipline, self-discipline**Definition:**

The term “discipline” refers to training people to obey a set of guidelines for moral behavior.

- Parents discipline their children by providing moral guidance and direction for them and teaching them to obey.
- Similarly, God disciplines his children to help them produce healthy spiritual fruit in their lives, such as joy, love, and patience.
- Discipline involves instruction regarding how to live to please God, as well as punishment for behavior that is against God’s will.
- Self-discipline is the process of applying moral and spiritual principles to one’s own life.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “discipline” could be translated as, “train and instruct” or “morally guide” or “punish for wrongdoing.”
- The noun, “discipline” could be translated as “moral training” or “punishment” or “moral correction” or “moral guidance and instruction.”

Bible References:

Waiting

disobey, disobedient, disobedience

Definition:

The term “disobey” means to not obey what someone in authority has commanded or instructed. A person who does this is being “disobedient.”

- A person who does something he was told not to do is disobeying.
- To disobey also means to refuse to do something that was commanded.
- The term “disobedient” is also used to describe the character of someone who habitually disobeys or rebels. It means that they are sinful or wicked.
- The term “disobedience” means “the act of not obeying” or “behavior that is against what God wants.”
- A “disobedient people” could be translated by “people who keep on disobeying” or “people who do not do what God commands.”

(See also: [authority](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-11]** God said to the man, “You listened to your wife and **disobeyed** me.”
- **[13-07]** If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they **disobeyed** them, God would punish them.
- **[16-02]** Because the Israelites kept **disobeying** God, he punished them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **[35-12]** “The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked faithfully for you! I never **disobeyed** you, and still you did not give me one small goat so I could celebrate with my friends.’”

dominion

Definition:

The term “dominion” refers to power, control, or authority over people, animals, or land.

- Jesus Christ is said to have dominion over all the earth, as prophet, priest, and king.
- Satan’s dominion has been defeated forever by Jesus Christ’s death on the cross.
- At creation, God said that man is to have dominion over fish, birds, and all creatures on the earth.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other Ways to translate this term could include “authority” or “power” or “control.”
- The phrase “have dominion over” could be translated as, “rule over” or “manage.”

(See: [authority](#), [power](#), [powers](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

earth, earthly

Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- “Earth” can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- The expressions, “let the earth be glad” and “He will judge the earth” are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term “earthly” usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as, “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as, “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include, “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [world](#), [worldly](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

chosen one, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, the elect

Definition:

The term, “the elect” literally means “chosen ones” or “chosen people” and refers to those whom God has appointed or selected to be his people. “Chosen One” or “Chosen One of God” is a title that refers to Jesus, who is the chosen Messiah.

- The term “choose” means to select something or someone or to decide something. It is often used to refer to God appointing people to belong to him and to serve him.
- To be “chosen” means to be “selected” or “appointed” to be or do something.
- God chose people to be holy, to be set apart by him for the purpose of bearing good spiritual fruit. That is why they are called “the chosen (ones) or ”the elect.”
- The term “chosen one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to certain people such as Moses and King David whom God had appointed as leaders over his people. It is also used to refer to the nation of Israel as God’s chosen people.
- The phrase “the elect” is an older term that literally means “the chosen ones” or “the chosen people.” This phrase in the original language is plural when referring to believers in Christ.
- In older English Bible versions, the term “elect” is used in both the Old and New Testaments to translate the word for “chosen one(s).” More modern versions use “elect” only in the New Testament, to refer to people who have been saved by God through faith in Jesus. Elsewhere in the Bible text, they translate this word more literally as “chosen ones.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “elect” with a word or phrase that means “chosen ones” or “chosen people.” These could also be translated as “people whom God chose” or “the ones God appointed to be his people.”
- The phrase, “who were chosen” could also be translated as “who were appointed” or “who were selected” or “whom God chose.”
- “I chose you” could be translated as, “I appointed you” or “I selected you.”
- In reference to Jesus, “Chosen One” could also be translated as, “God’s chosen One” or “God’s specially appointed Messiah” or “the One God appointed (to save people).”

(See: [appoint](#), [appointed](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

enslave, in bondage

Definition:

To “enslave” someone means to force that person to serve a master or a ruling country. To be “enslaved” or “in bondage” means to be under the control of something or someone.

- A person who is enslaved or in bondage must serve others without payment; he is not free to do what he wants.
- To “enslave” also means to take away a person’s freedom.
- Another word for “bondage” is “slavery.”
- In a figurative way, human beings are “enslaved” to sin until Jesus frees them from its control and power.
- When a person receives new life in Christ, he stops being a slave to sin and becomes a slave to righteousness.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “enslave” could be translated as “cause to not be free” or “force to serve others” or “put under the control of others.”
- The phrase “enslaved to” or “in bondage to” could be translated as “forced to be a slave of” or “forced to serve” or “under the control of.”

(See also: [free](#), [freedom](#), [liberty](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Ephesus

Facts:

Ephesus was an ancient Greek city on the west coast of what is now the present-day country of Turkey.

- During the time of the early Christians, Ephesus was the capital of Asia, which was a small Roman province at that time.
- Because of its location, this city was an important center of trade and travel.
- A well-known pagan temple for the worship of the goddess Artemis (Diana) was located in Ephesus.
- Paul lived and worked in Ephesus for more than two years and later appointed Timothy to lead the new believers there.
- The book of Ephesians in the New Testament is a letter that Paul wrote to the believers in Ephesus.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Asia](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#), [Timothy](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

everlasting, eternal, eternity

Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.
- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include, “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include, “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [forever](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[27-01]** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?”
- **[28-01]** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God’s laws.”
- **[28-10]** Jesus answered, “Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name’s sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**.”

evangelist

Definition:

An “evangelist” is a person who tells other people the good news about Jesus Christ.

- The literal meaning of “evangelist” is “someone who preaches the good news.”
- Jesus sent his apostles out to spread the good news about how to be part of God’s kingdom through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice for sin.
- All Christians are exhorted to share this good news.
- Some Christians are given a special spiritual gift to effectively tell the gospel to others. These people are said to have the gift of evangelism and are called “evangelists.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “evangelist” could be translated as, “someone who preaches the good news” or “teacher of the good news” or “person who proclaims the good news (about Jesus)” or “good news proclaimer.”

(See also: [good news](#), [gospel](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [gift](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

evil, wicked, wickedness

Definition:

The terms “evil” and “wicked” both refer to anything that is opposed to God’s holy character and will.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering or being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral”
- Other ways to translate these could include, “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [good](#), [goodness](#), [righteous](#), demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-04]** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **[03-01]** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **[03-02]** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **[04-02]** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **[08-12]** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **[14-02]** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **[17-01]** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **[18-11]** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.

- [29-08] The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- [45-02] They said, "We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!"
- [50-17] He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

exhort, exhortation**Definition:**

The term “exhort” means to strongly encourage and urge someone to do what is right. Such encouragement is called “exhortation.”

- The purpose of exhortation is to persuade other people to avoid sin and follow God’s will.
- The New Testament teaches Christians to exhort each other in love, not harshly or abruptly.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “exhort” could also be translated as “strongly urge” or “persuade” or “advise.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not imply that the exhorter is angry. The term should convey strength and seriousness, but should not refer to angry speech.
- In most contexts, the term “exhort” should be translated differently than “encourage,” which means to inspire, reassure, or comfort someone.
- Usually this term will also be translated differently from “admonish,” which means to warn or correct someone for his wrong behavior.

Bible References:

Waiting

faith

Definition:

In general, the term “faith” refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To “have faith” in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To “have faith in Jesus” means to believe all of God’s teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes “faith” refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression, “the truths of the faith.”
- In contexts such as “keep the faith” or “abandon the faith,” the term “faith” refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, “faith” can be translated as “belief” or “conviction” or “confidence” or “trust.”
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb “believe.” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- The expression, “keep the faith” could be translated by, “keep believing in Jesus” or “continue to believe in Jesus.”
- The sentence, “they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith” could be translated by, “they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught.”
- The expression, “my true son in the faith” could be translated by something like, “who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus” or “my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[05-06]** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham’s **faith** by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **[31-07]** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, “You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?”
- **[32-16]** Jesus said to her, “Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace.”

- **[38-09]** Then Jesus said to Peter, "Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail.

faithful, faithfulness

Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means, “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include, “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”

(See also: [faith](#), [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [08-05] Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- [14-12] Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- [15-13] The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- [17-09] David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- [18-04] God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s **unfaithfulness**, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon’s death.
- [35-12]”The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!’
- [49-17] But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- [50-04] If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you.”

ancestor, father, forefather

Definition:

When used literally, the term “father” refers to a person’s male parent. There are also several figurative uses of this term.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to the ancestors of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated as, “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4, “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader.”
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as, “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: [God the Father](#), [heavenly Father](#), [Father](#), [son](#), [son of](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

flesh

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression, “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression, “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression, “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kin-folk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression, “become one flesh” could be translated as, “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: [Euphemism](#)). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that the man and woman literally become one person.

Bible References:

Waiting

fool, foolish, folly**Definition:**

The term “fool” refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term “foolish” describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

- In the Bible, the term “fool” usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
- In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
- The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
- The term “folly” refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God’s will. Often “folly” also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “fool” could be translated as, “foolish person” or “unwise person” or “senseless person” or “ungodly person.”
- Ways to translate “foolish” could include, “lacking understanding” or “unwise” or “senseless.”

(See also: [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

forgive, forgiveness

Definition:

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against a person who did something hurtful. “Forgiveness” is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean, “cancel” as in the expression, “forgive a debt.”
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus’ sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “forgive” could be translated as, “pardon” or “cancel” or “release” or “not hold against” (someone).
- The term “forgiveness” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “practice of not resenting” or “declaring (someone) as not guilty” or “the act of pardoning.”

(See: [guilt](#), [guilty](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [07-10] But Esau had already **forgiven** Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
- [13-15] Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would **forgive** the people. God listened to Moses and **forgave** them.
- [17-13] David repented of his sin and God **forgave** him.
- [21-05] In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people’s hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would **forgive** their sins.
- [29-01] One day Peter asked Jesus, “Master, how many times should I **forgive** my brother when he sins against me?”
- [29-08] I **forgave** your debt because you begged me.
- [38-05] Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the **forgiveness** of sins.

sexual immorality

Definition:

The term “sexual immorality” refers to sexual activity that takes place outside the marriage relationship of a man and a woman. This is against God’s plan. Older English Bible versions call this “fornication.”

- This term can refer to any kind of sexual activity that is against God’s will, including homosexual acts and pornography.
- One type of sexual immorality is adultery, which is sexual activity specifically between a married person and someone who is not that person’s spouse.
- Another type of sexual immorality is “prostitution,” which involves being paid to have sex with someone.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to Israel’s unfaithfulness to God when they worshiped false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sexual immorality” could be translated as “immorality” as long as the correct meaning of the term is understood.
- Other ways to translate this term could include, “wrong sexual acts” or “sex outside of marriage.”
- This term should be translated in a different way from the term “adultery.”
- The translation of this term’s figurative uses should retain the literal term if possible since there is a common comparison in the Bible between unfaithfulness to God and unfaithfulness in the sexual relationship.

(See also: [adultery](#), [adulterer](#), [false god](#), [god](#), [prostitute](#), [harlot](#), [unfaithful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

generation

UNDER REVIEW

Definition:

The term “generation” refers to a group of people who were all born around the same time period.

- A generation can also refer to a span of time. In Bible times, a generation was usually considered to be about 40 years.
- Parents and their children are from two different generations.
- In the Bible, the term “generation” is also used figuratively to refer generally to people who share common characteristics.

Translation Suggestions

- The phrase “this generation” or “people of this generation” could be translated as, “the people living now” or “you people.”
- “This wicked generation” could also be translated as, “these wicked people living now.”
- The expression “from generation to generation” or “from one generation to the next” could be translated as, “people living now, as well as their children and grandchildren” or “people in every time period” or “people in this time period and future time periods” or “all people and their descendants.”
- “A generation to come will serve him; they will tell the next generation about Yahweh” could also be translated as “Many people in the future will serve Yahweh and will tell their children and grandchildren about him.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Gentile

Facts:

The term “Gentile” refers to anyone who is not a Jew. Gentiles are people who are not descendants of Jacob.

- In the Bible, the term “uncircumcised” is also used figuratively to refer to Gentiles because many of them did not circumcise their male children as the Israelites did.
- Because God chose the Jews to be his special people, they thought of the Gentiles as outsiders who could never be God’s people.
- The Jews were also called “Israelites” or “Hebrews” at different times in history. They referred to everyone else as a “Gentile.”
- Gentile could also be translated as “not a Jew” or “non-Jewish” or “not an Israelite” (Old Testament) or “non-Jew.”
- Traditionally, Jews would not eat with Gentiles or associate with them, which at first caused problems within the early church.

(See also: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Jew](#), [Jewish](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

gift

Definition:

The term “gift” refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return

- Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called “gifts.”
- In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift
- The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
- In the New Testament, the term “gifts” is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “gift” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “something that is given.”
- In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term “gift from the Spirit” could be translated as, “spiritual ability” or “special ability from the Holy Spirit” or “special spiritual skill that God gave.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

glory, glorious

Definition:

In general, the term “glory” means honor, splendor, and extreme greatness. Anything that has glory is said to be “glorious.”

- Sometimes “glory” refers to something of great value and importance. In other contexts it communicates splendor, brightness, or judgment.
- For example, the expression “glory of the shepherds” refers to the lush pastures where their sheep had plenty of grass to eat.
- Glory is especially used to describe God, who is more glorious than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything in his character reveals his glory and his splendor.
- The expression “to glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include, “splendor” or “brightness” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression, “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as, “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”

(See also: [glorify](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [23-07] Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- [25-06] Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- [37-01] When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God.”
- [37-08] Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glory** if you believe in me?”

God

Facts:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh” which means, “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include, “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being.”
- Other ways to translate “God” could be, “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god.
- Another way to make this distinction would be to use two different terms for “God” and “god.”
- The phrase, “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as, “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [create](#), [creation](#), [Creator](#), [false god](#), [god](#), [God the Father](#), [Heavenly Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [idol](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Yahweh](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [01-01]**God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- [01-15]**God** made man and woman in his own image.
- [05-03]"I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- [09-14]**God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- [10-02] Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- [16-01] The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- [22-07] You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- [24-09] There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- [25-07]"Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- [28-01]"There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- [49-09] But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- [50-16] But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

God the Father, heavenly Father, Father

Facts:

The terms, “God the Father” and “heavenly Father” refer to Yahweh, the one true God. This term also occurs as “Father,” especially when Jesus is referring to him.

- God exists as God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Each one is fully God, and yet they are only one God. This is a mystery that mere humans cannot fully understand.
- God the Father sent God the Son (Jesus) into the world and he sends the Holy Spirit to his people.
- Anyone who believes in God the Son becomes a child of God the Father, and God the Holy Spirit comes to live in that person. This is another mystery that human beings cannot fully understand.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the phrase “God the Father,” it is best to translate “Father” with the same word that the language naturally uses to refer to a human father.
- The term “heavenly Father” could be translated by “Father who lives in heaven” or “Father God who lives in heaven” or “God our Father from heaven.”
- Usually “Father” is capitalized, to show that this refers to God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [father](#), [forefather](#), [God](#), [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [24-09] There is only one God. But John heard **God the Father** speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- [29-09] Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly Father** will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- [37-09] Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, “**Father**, thank you for hearing me.”
- [40-07] Then Jesus cried out, “It is finished! **Father**, I give my spirit into your hands.”
- [42-10] “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of **the Father**, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- [43-08] “Jesus is now exalted to the right hand of **God the Father**.”

- [50-10]”Then the righteous ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of **God their Father.**”

good, goodness

Definition:

The word “good” has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God’s character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is “good” could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is “good” could be called “fertile” or “productive.”
- A “good” crop could be a “plentiful” crop.
- A person can be “good” at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, “a good farmer.”
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”
- The term “goodness” usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include, “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as, “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone.
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include, “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [profit](#), [profitable](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [01-04] God saw that what he had created was **good**.

- [01-11] God planted...the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.”
- [01-12] Then God said, ”It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- [02-04]”God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- [08-12]”You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good!**”
- [14-15] Joshua was a **good** leader because he tTable of Contentsrusted and obeyed God.
- [18-13] Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- [28-01]”**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, ”Why do you call me ‘**good?**’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

good news, gospel

Definition:

The term “gospel” literally means “good news” and refers to a message or announcement that tells people something that benefits them and makes them glad.

- In the Bible, this term usually refers to the message about God’s salvation for people through Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross.
- In most English Bibles, “good news” is usually translated as “gospel” and is also used in phrases such as, the “gospel of Jesus Christ,” the “gospel of God” and the “gospel of the kingdom.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways to translate this term could include, “good message” or “good announcement” or “God’s message of salvation” or “the good things God teaches about Jesus.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase, “good news of” could include, “good news/message about” or “good message from” or “the good things God tells us about” or “what God says about how he saves people.”

(See: [kingdom](#), , [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [salvation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [23-06] The angel said, “Do not be afraid, because I have some **good news** for you. The Messiah, the Master, has been born in Bethlehem!”
- [26-03] Jesus read, “God has given me his Spirit so that I can proclaim **good news** to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed. This is the year of the Lord’s favor.”
- [45-10] Philip also used other Scriptures to tell him the **good news of Jesus**.
- [46-10] Then they sent them off to preach the **good news about Jesus** in many other places.
- [47-01] One day, Paul and his friend Silas went to the town of Philippi to proclaim the **good news about Jesus**.
- [47-13] The **good news about Jesus** kept spreading, and the Church kept growing.
- [50-01] For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the **good news about Jesus** the Messiah.
- [50-02] When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My disciples will preach the **good news** about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”

- **[50-03]** Before he returned to heaven, Jesus told Christians to proclaim the **good news** to people who have never heard it.

grace, gracious**Definition:**

The word “grace” refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term “gracious” describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God’s grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression “to find grace” is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that “grace” could be translated include, “divine kindness” or “God’s favor” or “God’s kindness and forgiveness for sinners” or “merciful kindness.”
- The term “gracious” could be translated as “full of grace” or “kind” or “merciful” or “mercifully kind.”
- The expression, “he found grace in the eyes of God” could be translated as, “he received mercy from God” or “God mercifully helped him” or “God showed his favor to him” or “God was pleased with him and helped him.”

Bible References:

Waiting

head

Definition:

In the Bible, the word “head” is used with several figurative meanings.

- Often this term is used to refer to being in authority over people, as in, “you have made me the head over nations.” This could be translated as, “You have made me the ruler...” or “You have given me authority over...”
- Jesus is called the “head of the church.” Just as a person’s head guides and directs the members of its body, so Jesus guides and directs the members of his “body,” the Church.
- The New Testament teaches that a husband is the “head” or authority of his wife. He is given the responsibility of leading and guiding his wife and family.
- The expression, “no razor will ever touch his head” means “ he will never cut or shave his hair.”
- The term “head” can also refer to the beginning or source of something as in the “head of the street.”
- The expression “heads of grain” refers to the top part of a wheat or barley plant that contains the seeds.
- Another figurative use for “head” is when it is used to represent the whole person as in, “this gray head” referring to an elderly person or “the head of Joseph” referring to Joseph. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- The expression “let their blood be on his own head” means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “head” could be translated as, “authority” or “the one who leads and directs” or “the one who is responsible for.”
- The expression “head of” can refer to the whole person and so this expression could be translated using just the person’s name. For example, “the head of Joseph” could simply be translated as “Joseph.”
- The expression “will be on his own head” could be translated as “will be on him” or “he will be punished for” or “he will be held responsible for” or “he will be considered guilty for.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include, “beginning” or “source” or “ruler” or “leader” or “top.”

(See: [grain](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

- [Prev chunk: publish-current](#)

- This chunk : review-publish | publish-current
- Next chunk: publish-current

heart

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with no holding back, with complete commitment and willingness.
- The expression, “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. They have been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this nonfiguratively with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as, “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as, “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include, “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: [hard](#), [hardness](#), [harden](#) other)

Bible References:

Waiting

heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.
- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it is a way of referring to God. For example, when Matthew writes about the “kingdom of heaven” he is referring to the kingdom of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it could be translated as “God.”
- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as, “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See: [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [04-02] They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- [14-11] He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- [23-07] Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- [29-09] Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- [37-09] Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- [42-11] Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

heir

Definition:

An “heir” is a person who legally receives property or money that belongs to a person who has died.

- In Bible times, the main heir was the firstborn son, who received most of the property and money of his father.
- The Bible also uses “heir” in a figurative sense to refer to Christians receiving spiritual benefits from God as their spiritual father.
- As God’s children, Christians are said to be “joint heirs” with Jesus Christ. This could also be translated as, “co-heirs” or “fellow heirs” or “heirs together with.”
- The term “heir” could be translated as “person receiving benefits” or whatever expression is used in the language to communicate the meaning of someone who receives property and other things when a parent or other relative dies.

(See also: [firstborn](#), [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heritage](#), [heir](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

holy, holiness

Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- Since God is holy, people cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because they are mere human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include, “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [consecratesanctify](#), [sanctification](#), [set apart](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-16]** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **[09-12]** “You are standing on **holy** ground.”
- **[13-02]** “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation.”
- **[13-05]** “Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**.”
- **[22-05]** “So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God.”
- **[50-02]** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord

Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as, “the Spirit” and “Spirit of Yahweh” and “Spirit of truth.”
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God’s Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God’s will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate “holy” and “spirit.”
- Ways to translate this term could also include, “Pure Spirit” or “Spirit who is Holy” or “God the Spirit.”

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [God](#), [Lord](#), [God the Father](#), [heavenly Father](#), [Father](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#), [gift](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-01]** But **God’s Spirit** was there over the water.
- **[24-08]** When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- **[26-01]** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **[26-03]** Jesus read, “God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed.”
- **[42-10]** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **[43-03]** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **[43-08]** “And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are now seeing and hearing.”

- **[43-11]** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit.**"
- **[45-01]** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.

honor, to honor

Definition:

The terms “honor” and “to honor” refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God also instructs Christians to honor others, but not to try to get honor for themselves.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents, which includes respect and obedience.
- the terms “honor” and “glory” are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Honor for God includes thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “honor” could include, “respect” or “esteem” or “high regard.”
- The term “to honor” could be translated as “to show special respect to” or “to cause to be praised” or “to show high regard for” or “to highly value.”

(See also: [dishonor](#), [dishonorable](#), [glory](#), [glorious](#), [glorify](#), [praise](#) other)

Bible References:

Waiting

humble, humility

Definition:

The term “humble” describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand our weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- If a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one’s own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one’s gifts and abilities.
- The phrase “be humble” could be translated as “don’t be prideful.”
- “Humble yourself before God” could be translated as, “Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness.”

(See also: [proud](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [17-02] David was a **humble** and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- [34-10] ”God will **humble** everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever **humbles** himself.”

idol, idolatrous

Definition:

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#), [kingdom](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-05]** ”Do not make **idols** or worship them, because I, Yahweh, am a jealous God.”
- **[13-12]** Aaron made a golden **idol** in the shape of a calf. The people began to wildly worship the **idol** and make sacrifices to it!
- **[14-03]** ”You must completely destroy all of their **idols**. If you do not obey me, you will worship their **idols** instead of me.”
- **[18-12]** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel worshiped **idols**. This kind of worship often included sexual immorality and sometimes even child sacrifice.
- **[19-16]** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshipping **idols** and to start showing justice and mercy to others.

in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him

Definition:

The phrase “in Christ” and related terms refer to the state or condition of being in relationship with Jesus Christ through faith in him.

- Other related terms include, “in Christ Jesus, in Jesus Christ, in the Lord Jesus, in the Lord Jesus Christ.”
- Possible meanings for the term, “in Christ” could include, “because you belong to Christ” or “through the relationship you have with Christ” or “based on your faith in Christ.”
- These related terms all have the same meaning of being in a state of believing in Jesus and being his disciple.
- Note: Sometimes the word “in” belongs with the verb. For example, “share in Christ” means to “share in” the benefits that come from knowing Christ. To “glory in” Christ means to be glad and give praise to God for who Jesus is and what he has done. To “believe in” Christ means to trust him as Savior and know him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “in Christ” and “in the Lord” (and related phrases) could include:
 - “who belong to Christ”
 - “because you believe in Christ”
 - “because Christ has saved us”
 - “in service to the Lord”
 - “relying on the Lord”
 - “because of what the Lord has done.”
- People who “believe in” Christ or who “have faith in” Christ believe what Jesus taught and are trusting him to save them because of his sacrifice on the cross that paid the penalty for their sins. Some languages may have one word that translates verbs like “believe in” or “share in” or “trust in.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [Lord](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faith](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

Definition:

The terms “inherit” and “inheritance” refer to receiving something valuable from a parent or other person because of a special relationship with that person. The “heir” is the person who receives the inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- A spiritual inheritance is everything that God gives people who trust in Jesus, including blessings in the present life as well as eternal life with him.
- The Bible also calls God’s people his inheritance, which means that they belong to him; they are his valued possession.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.
- There is also a figurative or spiritual sense in which people who belong to God are said to “inherit the land.” This means that they will prosper and be blessed by God in both physical and spiritual ways.
- In the New Testament, God promises that those who trust in Jesus will “inherit salvation” and “inherit eternal life.” It is also expressed as, “inherit the kingdom of God.” This is a spiritual inheritance that lasts forever.
- There are other figurative meanings for these terms:
 - The Bible says that wise people will “inherit glory” and righteous people will “inherit good things.”
 - To “inherit the promises” means to receive the good things that God has promised to give his people.
 - This term is also used in a negative sense to refer to foolish or disobedient people who “inherit the wind” or “inherit folly.” This means they receive the consequences of their sinful actions, including punishment and worthless living.

Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include, “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
- Ways to translate “inheritance” could include, “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
- When God’s people are referred to as his inheritance this could be translated as, “valued ones belonging to him.”
- The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions” or “person chosen to receive (God’s) spiritual possessions or blessings.”
- The term “heritage” could be translated as, “blessings from God” or “inherited blessings.”

(See also: [heir](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Promised Land](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-06]** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**."
- **[27-01]** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?"
- **[35-03]** "There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, 'Father, I want my **inheritance** now!' So the father divided his property between the two sons."

Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel

Facts:

The term “Israel” is the name that God gave to Jacob. It means, “he struggles with God.”

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the “people of Israel,” the “nation of Israel,” or the “Israelites.”
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel was made up of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called “Judah” and the northern kingdom, called “Israel.”
- Often the term “Israel” can be translated as, “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel,” depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [nation](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-15]** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **[09-03]** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **[09-05]** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **[10-01]** They said, “This is what the God of **Israel** says, ‘Let my people go!’”
- **[14-12]** But despite all this, the people of **Israel** complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **[15-09]** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **[15-12]** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave **Israel** peace along all its borders.
- **[16-16]** So God punished **Israel** again for worshiping idols.
- **[43-06]** “Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

Facts:

Jesus is God's Son. The name "Jesus" means, "Yahweh saves." The term "Christ" is a title that means "anointed one" and is another word for the Messiah.

- The two names are often combined as "Jesus Christ" or "Christ Jesus." These names emphasize that God's Son is the Messiah who came to save people from being punished eternally for their sins.
- In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His earthly parents were told by an angel to call him "Jesus" because he was destined to save people from their sins.
- Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- Many languages spell "Jesus" and "Christ" in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesucristo," "Jezus Christus," "Yesus Kristus", and "Hesukristo" are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
- For the term, "Christ," some languages may prefer to use some form of the term "Messiah" throughout.
- Also consider how these names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [God](#), [God the Father](#), [Heavenly Father](#), [high priest](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#), [Mary](#), [Savior](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[22-04]** The angel said, "You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him **Jesus** and he will be the Messiah."
- **[23-02]** "Name him **Jesus** (which means, 'Yahweh saves'), because he will save the people from their sins."
- **[24-07]** So John baptized him (Jesus), even though **Jesus** had never sinned.
- **[24-09]** There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw **Jesus** the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized **Jesus**.
- **[25-08]** **Jesus** did not give in to Satan's temptations, so Satan left him.

- [26-08] Then **Jesus** went throughout the region of Galilee, and large crowds came to him. They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and **Jesus** healed them.
- [31-03] Then **Jesus** finished praying and went to the disciples. He walked on top of the water across the lake toward their boat!
- [38-02] He (Judas) knew that the Jewish leaders denied that **Jesus** was the Messiah and that they were plotting to kill him.
- [40-08] Through his death, **Jesus** opened a way for people to come to God.
- [42-11] Then **Jesus** was taken up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight. **Jesus** sat down at the right hand of God to rule over all things.
- [50-17] **Jesus** and his people will live on the new earth, and he will reign forever over everything that exists. He will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death. **Jesus** will rule his kingdom with peace and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

kingdom

Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as, “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be, “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase, “kingdom of light” could be translated as, “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-02]** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **[18-04]** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon’s death.

- **[18-07]** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **[18-08]** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **[21-08]** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

know, knowledge, make known

Definition:

To “know” means to understand something or to be aware of a fact. The expression “make known” is an expression that means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing things in both the physical and spiritual worlds.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God’s will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include, “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- Some languages have two different words for “know” depending on whether it refers to knowing facts or to knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as, “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as, “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [reveal](#), [revelation](#), [understand](#), [understanding](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh

Definition:

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms “law” and “God’s law” are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the “law” can refer to:
 - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites.
 - all the laws given to Moses
 - the first five books of the Old Testament.
 - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as “scriptures” in the New Testament).
 - all of God’s instructions and will.
- The phrase “the law and the prophets” is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or “Old Testament”).

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, “laws” since they refer to many instructions.
- The “law of Moses” could be translated as “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Depending on the context, “the law of Moses” could also be translated as, “the law that God told to Moses” or “God’s laws that Moses wrote down” or “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Ways to translate “the law” or “law of God” or “God’s laws” could include: “laws from God” or “God’s commands” or “laws that God gave” or “everything that God commands” or “all of God’s instructions”
- The phrase, “law of Yahweh” could also be translated as, “Yahweh’s laws” or “laws that Yahweh said to obey” or “laws from Yahweh” or “things Yahweh commanded.”

(See also: [instruct](#), [instruction](#), [Moses](#), [Ten Commandments](#), [lawful](#), [lawfully](#), [unlawful](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-07]** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.

- **[13-09]** Anyone who disobeyed **God's law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.
- **[15-13]** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.
- **[16-01]** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God's laws**.
- **[21-05]** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.
- **[27-01]** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"
- **[28-01]** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws**."

life, live, living, alive

Definition:

All these terms refer to being physically alive, not dead. They are also used figuratively to refer to being alive spiritually. The following discusses what is meant by “physical life” and “spiritual life.”

1. Physical life

- Physical life is the presence of the spirit in the body. God breathed life into Adam’s body, and he became a living being.
- A “life” can also refer to an individual person, as in, “a life was saved”.
- Sometimes the word “life” refers to the experience of living, as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
- It can also refer to a person’s lifespan as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
- The term “living” may refer to being physically alive as in, “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
- In the Bible, the concept of “life” is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

2. Spiritual life

- A person has spiritual life when he believes in Jesus and God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- This life is also called “eternal life” to indicate that it does not end.
- The opposite of spiritual life is spiritual death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “life” can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
- The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
- The expression “end of his life” could be translated as, “when he stopped living.”
- The expression “spared their lives” could be translated as, “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
- The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as, “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
- When the Bible text talks about being alive spiritually, “life” could be translated as “spiritual life” or “eternal life,” depending on the context.
- The concept of “spiritual life” could also be translated as, “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God’s Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as, “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [01-10] So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- [03-01] After a long time, many people were **living** in the world.
- [08-13] When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- [17-09] However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- [27-01] One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- [37-05] Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- [44-05] "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

light

Definition:

There are several figurative uses of the term “light” in the Bible. It is often used as a metaphor for righteousness, holiness, and truth. (See: [Metaphor](#))

- Jesus said, “I am the light of the world” to express that he brings God’s true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
- Christians are commanded to “walk in the light,” which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
- The apostle John stated that “God is light,” and there is no darkness in him.
- Light and darkness are completely opposite. Darkness is the absence of all light.
- Jesus said that he is “the light of the world” and that his followers should shine like lights in the world, by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
- “Walking in the light” represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

Translation Suggestions:

- When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms “light” and “darkness” even when they are used figuratively.
- It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, “walk as children of light” could be translated as, “live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight.”
- Make sure that the translation of “light” does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: [darkness](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

lord, master, sir

Definition:

The term “lord” refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated as “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It could also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, it could be translated as “master” if the context shows it means “religious teacher.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is written as “Lord” (capitalized).

(See also: [Lord](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[25-05]** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, “In God’s word, he commands his people, ‘Do not test the **Lord** your God.’”
- **[25-07]** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.’”
- **[26-03]** This is the year of the **Lord’s** favor.
- **[27-02]** The law expert replied that God’s law says, “Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind.”
- **[31-05]** Then Peter said to Jesus, “**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water”
- **[43-09]** “But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!”
- **[47-03]** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **[47-11]** Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved.”
-

Lord

Facts:

The term “Lord” refers to someone who has ownership or authority over people. When it is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note however that when used as a form of addressing someone or at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as, “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as, “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has, “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has, “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULB and UDB, the title, “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages translate this term as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme ruler.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

love

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for “love” which some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others, even when it doesn’t benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

- Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
- When people love others with this kind of love, it involves actions that show that someone is thinking of what will cause the other person to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
- In the ULB, the word “love” refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

2. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love or love for a friend or family member.

- This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
- It can also be used in such contexts as, “They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet.” This means that they “like very much” or “greatly desire” to do that.

3. The word “love” can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

4. In the figurative expression, “Jacob I have loved, but Esau I have hated,” the term “loved” refers to God’s choosing of Jacob to be in a covenant relationship with him. This could also be translated as “chosen.” Although Esau was also blessed by God, he wasn’t given the privilege of being in the covenant. The term “hated” is used figuratively here to mean “rejected” or “not chosen.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word “love” in the ULB refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, “devoted, faithful caring” or “care for unselfishly” or “love from God.” Make sure that the word used to translate God’s love can include giving up one’s own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word “love” describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, “like very much” or “care for” or “have strong affection for.”
- In contexts where the word “love” is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by “strongly prefer” or “like very much” or “greatly desire.”

- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express “love” as an action. So for example, they might translate “love is patient, love is kind” as, “when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [save](#), [safe](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [27-02] The law expert replied that God’s law says, “**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself.”
- [33-08] “The thorny ground is a person who hears God’s word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God.”
- [36-05] As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, “This is my Son whom I **love**.”
- [39-10] “Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me.”
- [47-01] She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- [48-01] When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- [49-03] He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- [49-04] He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- [49-07] Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- [49-09] But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- [49-13] God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

mercy, merciful

Definition:

The terms “mercy” and “merciful” refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term “mercy” can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as “merciful” when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “mercy” could be translated as, “kindness” or “compassion” or “pity.”
- The term “merciful” could be translated as, “showing pity” or “being kind to” or “forgiving.”
- To “show mercy to” or “have mercy on” could be translated as, “treat kindly” or “be compassionate toward.”

(See: [compassion](#), [compassionate](#), [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[19-16]** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing justice and **mercy** to others.
- **[19-17]** He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had **mercy** on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- **[20-12]** The Persian Empire was strong but **merciful** to the people it conquered.
- **[27-11]** Then Jesus asked the law expert, “What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?” He replied, “The one who was **merciful** to him.”
- **[32-11]** But Jesus said to him, “No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had **mercy** on you.”

- **[34-09]**”But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ‘God, please be **merciful** to me because I am a sinner.’”

mighty, might

Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase, “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase, “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term, “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as, “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as, “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: [Almighty](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [strength](#), [strengthen](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

mind

Definition:

The term “mind” refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To “have the mind of Christ” means to be thinking and acting as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To “change his mind” means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “mind” could also be translated as “thoughts” or “reasoning” or “thinking” or “understanding.”
- The expression, “keep in mind” could be translated as, “remember” or “pay attention to this” or “be sure to know this.”
- The expression, “heart, soul, and mind” could also be translated as, “what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about.”
- The expression “call to mind” could be translated as, “remember” or “think about.”
- The expression, “changed his mind and went” could also be translated as, “decided differently and went” or “decided to go after all” or “changed his opinion and went.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [heart](#), [soul](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

mystery, hidden truth

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “mystery” refers to something unknown or difficult to understand that God is now explaining.

- The New Testament states that the gospel of Christ was a mystery that was not known in past ages.
- One of the specific points described as a mystery is that Jews and Gentiles would be equal in Christ.
- This term could also be translated as “secret” or “hidden things” or “something unknown.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [Gentile](#), [good news](#), [gospel](#), [Jew](#), [Jewish](#), [Jews](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

name

Definition:

In the Bible, the word “name” is used in several figurative ways.

- In some contexts, “name” can refer to a person’s reputation, as in, “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” can also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” means speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone can refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like, “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as, “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression, “make a name for ourselves” could be translated, “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression, “call his name” could be translated as, “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression, “those who love your name” could be translated as, “those who love you.”
- The expression, “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshipping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See: [call](#), [calling](#), [called](#), [call out](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

neighbor

Definition:

The term “neighbor” usually refers to a person who lives nearby. It can also refer more generally to someone who lives in the same community or people group.

- A “neighbor” is someone who would be protected and treated kindly because he is part of the same community.
- In the New Testament parable of the Good Samaritan, Jesus used the term “neighbor” figuratively, expanding its meaning to include all human beings, even someone who is considered an enemy.
- If possible, it is best to translate this term literally with a word or phrase that means “person who lives nearby.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [enemy](#), [parable](#), [people group](#), [peoples](#), [the people](#), [a people](#), [Samaria](#), [Samaritan](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

obey, obedient, obedience

Definition:

The term “obey” means to do what is required or commanded. The term “obedient” describes the character of someone who obeys. Sometimes the command is about not doing something, as in, “do not steal.”

- Usually the term “obey” is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority.
- For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, slaves obey their masters, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, they obey by not doing that.
- Ways to translate this term could include a word or phrase that means, “do what is commanded” or “follow orders” or “do what God says to do.”
- The term “obedient” could be translated as, “doing what was commanded” or “following orders” or “doing what God commands.”

(See also: [citizen](#), [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [kingdom](#), [law](#), [principle](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-04]** Noah **obeyed** God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **[05-06]** Again Abraham **obeyed** God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- **[05-10]** “Because you (Abraham) have **obeyed** me, all the families of the world will be blessed through your family”
- **[11-06]** But the Egyptians did not believe God or **obey** his commands.
- **[13-07]** If the people **obeyed** these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them.

pastor

Definition:

The term “pastor” is literally the same word as “shepherd.” It is used as a title for someone who is the spiritual leader for a group of believers.

- In English Bible versions, “pastor” only occurs one time, in the book of Ephesians. It is the same word as is translated as “shepherd” elsewhere.
- In some languages, the word for “pastor” is the same as the word for “shepherd.”
- It is also the same word as is used to refer to Jesus as the “good Shepherd.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the word for “shepherd” in the project language.
- Other ways to translate this term could include, “spiritual shepherd” or “shepherding Christian leader.”

(See also: [shepherd](#), [to shepherd](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Paul, Saul

Facts:

Paul was a leader of the early church who was sent by Jesus to take the good news to many other people groups.

- Paul was a Jew who was born in the Roman city of Tarsus, and was therefore also a Roman citizen.
- Paul was originally called by his Jewish name, Saul.
- Saul became a Jewish religious leader and arrested Jews who became Christians because he thought they were dishonoring God by believing in Jesus.
- Jesus revealed himself to Saul in a blinding light and told him to stop hurting Christians.
- Saul believed in Jesus and began teaching his fellow Jews about him.
- Later, God sent Saul to teach non-Jewish people about Jesus and started churches in different cities and provinces of the Roman empire. At this time he started being called by the Roman name “Paul.”
- Paul also wrote letters to encourage and teach Christians in the churches in these cities. Several of these letters are in the New Testament.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christian](#), [Jewish Leaders](#), [Rome](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[45-06]** A young man named **Saul** agreed with the people who killed Stephen and guarded their robes while they threw stones at him.
- **[46-01]** **Saul** was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the believers.
- **[46-02]** While **Saul** was on his way to Damascus, a bright light from heaven shone all around him, and he fell to the ground. **Saul** heard someone say, “**Saul! Saul!** Why do you persecute me?”
- **[46-05]** So Ananias went to **Saul**, placed his hands on him, and said, “Jesus who appeared to you on your way here, sent me to you so that you can regain your sight and be filled with the Holy Spirit.” **Saul** immediately was able to see again, and Ananias baptized him.
- **[46-06]** Right away, **Saul** began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”
- **[46-09]** Barnabas and **Saul** went there (Antioch) to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the church.

- **[47-01]** As **Saul** traveled throughout the Roman Empire, he began to use his Roman name, "**Paul.**"
- **[47-14]** **Paul** and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, preaching and teaching people the good news about Jesus.

peace, peaceful

Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [15-06] God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- [15-12] Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- [16-03] Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- [21-13] He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- [48-14] David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- [50-17] Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

persevere, perseverance

Definition:

The terms “persevere” and “perseverance” refer to continuing to do something even though it may be very difficult or take a long time.

- To persevere can also mean to keep acting in a Christ-like way even while going through difficult trials or circumstances.
- If a person has “perseverance” it means he is able to keep doing what he should do, even when it is painful or difficult.
- Continuing to believe what God teaches requires perseverance, especially when faced with false teachings.
- Be careful not to use a word like “stubborn” which usually has a negative meaning.

(See also: [patient](#), [patience](#), [trial](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

power, powers

Definition:

The term “power” refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. “Powers” refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The “power of God” refers to God’s ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “power” could also be translated as “ability” or “strength” or “energy” or “ability to do miracles” or “control.”
- Possible ways to translate the term “powers” could include, “powerful beings” or “controlling spirits” or “those who control others.”
- An expression like “save us from the power of our enemies” could be translated as, “save us from being oppressed by our enemies” or “rescue us from being controlled by our enemies.” In this case, “power” has the meaning of using one’s strength to control and oppress others.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[22-05]** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the **power** of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”
- **[26-01]** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the **power** of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **[32-15]** Immediately Jesus realized that **power** had gone out from him.
- **[42-11]** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, “Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you **power** when the Holy Spirit comes on you.”
- **[43-06]** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the **power** of God, as you have seen and already know.”
- **[44-08]** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the **power** of Jesus the Messiah.”

praise

Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term “to praise” could also be translated as, “to speak well of” or “to highly honor with words” or “to say good things about.”
- The noun “praise” could be translated as, “spoken honor” or “speech that honors” or “speaking good things about.”

(See also: [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[12-13]** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.
- **[17-08]** When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings.
- **[22-07]** Zechariah said, “**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people!
- **[43-13]** They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other.
- **[47-08]** They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.

pray, prayer

Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. This term is also used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#), [praise](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [06-05] Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- [13-12] But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- [19-08] Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- [21-07] Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- [38-11] Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- [43-13] The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- [49-18] God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

predestine, predestined

Definition:

The terms “predestine” and “predestined” refer to deciding or planning beforehand that something will happen.

- This term especially refers to God predestining people to receive eternal life.
- Sometimes the word “foreordain” is used, which also means to decide beforehand.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “predestine” could also be translated as “decide before” or “decide ahead of time.”
- The term “predestined” could be translated as, “decided long ago” or “planned ahead of time” or “decided beforehand.”
- A phrase such as, “predestined us” could be translated as “decided long ago that we” or “already decided ahead of time that we.”
- Note that the translation of this term should be different from the translation of the term “foreknew.”

(See also: [foreknew](#), [foreknowledge](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

prison, prisoner, imprison**Definition:**

The term “prison” refers to a place where criminals are kept as a punishment for their crimes. A “prisoner” is someone who has been put in the prison.

- A person may be kept in a prison while waiting to be judged in a trial.
- The term “imprisoned” means “kept in a prison” or “kept in captivity.”
- Many prophets and other servants of God were put in prison even though they had not done anything wrong.

Translation Suggestions:

- Another word for “prison” is “jail.”
- This term could also be translated as “dungeon” in contexts where the prison is probably underground or beneath the main part of a palace or other building.
- The term “prisoners” can also refer in general to people who have been captured by an enemy and kept somewhere against their will. Another way to translate this meaning would be “captives.”
- Other ways to translate “imprisoned” could be, “kept as a prisoner” or “kept in captivity” or “held captive.”

(See also: [captive](#), [captivity](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

proclaim, proclamation

Definition:

To proclaim is to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as, “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See: [preach](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

promise

Definition:

A promise is a pledge to do a certain thing. When someone promises something, it means he is committing to do something.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.
- A promise is often accompanied by an oath to confirm that it will be done.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “promise” could be translated as, “commitment” or “assurance” or “guarantee.”
- To “promise to do something” could be translated as, “assure someone that you will do something” or “commit to doing something.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [swear](#), [swear by](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-15]** God said, “I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children.”?
- **[03-16]** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **[04-08]** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God’s **promise**.
- **[05-04]** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of **promise**.”
- **[08-15]** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob’s twelve sons and their families.
- **[17-14]** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **[50-01]** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example, the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as, “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as, “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as, “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: [Baal](#), [divination](#), [diviner](#), [soothsaying](#), [soothsayer](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [false prophet](#), [fulfill](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [vision](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [12-12] When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- [17-13] God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- [19-01] Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God's messages.
- [19-06] All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- [19-17] Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- [21-09] The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- [43-05] "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- [43-07] "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- [48-12] Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.
-

psalm

Definition:

The term “psalm” refers to a sacred song, often in the form of a poem that was written to be sung.

- The Old Testament book of Psalms has a collection of these songs written by King David and other Israelites such as Moses, Solomon, and Asaph, among others.
- The psalms were used by the nation of Israel in their worship of God.
- Psalms can be used to express joy, faith, and reverence, as well as pain and sorrow.
- In the New Testament, Christians are instructed to sing psalms to God as a way of worshiping him.

(See also: [David](#), [faith](#), [joy](#), [joyful](#), [Moses](#), [sacred](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

raise, rise, risen, arise, arose**Definition:****raise, raise up**

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The figurative phrase, “raise up” means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase, “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

rise, arise

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose” and “arose” are used for expressing past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as, “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen”!

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “raise” or “raise up” can be translated as “to lift up” or “to make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as, “to cause to appear” or “to appoint” or “to bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as, “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead,” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as, “provide” or “appoint” or “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: [resurrection](#), [appoint](#), [appointed](#), [exalt](#), [exaltation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [21-14] The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.
- [41-05] "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- [43-07] "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- [44-05] "You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead. "
- [44-08] Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- [48-04] This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- [49-02] He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- [49-12] You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

reconcile, reconciliation

Definition:

The terms “reconcile” and “reconciliation” refer to “making peace” between people who were formerly enemies with each other.

- In the Bible, this term usually refers to God reconciling people to himself through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus Christ.
- Because of sin, all human beings are God’s enemies. But because of his compassionate love, God provided a way for people to be reconciled to him through Jesus.
- Through trusting in Jesus’ sacrifice as payment for their sin, people can be forgiven and have peace with God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “reconcile” could also be translated as, “make peace” or “restore good relations” or “cause to be friends.”
- The term “reconciliation” could be translated as “restoring good relations” or “making peace” or “causing peaceful relating.”

(See also: [peace](#), [peaceful](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

redeem, redemption, redeemer

Definition:

The terms “redeem” and “redemption” refer to buying back something that was previously owned or held captive. A “redeemer” is someone who redeems something or someone.

- God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things.
- For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word “ransom” also refers to this practice.
- If someone’s land had been sold, a relative of that person could “redeem” or “buy back” that land so that it would stay in the family.
- These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full payment for people’s sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “redeem” could also be translated as “buy back” or “pay to free (someone)” or “ransom.”
- The term “redemption” could be translated as “ransom” or “freedom payment” or “the buying back.”
- The words, “ransom” and “redeem” have basically the same meaning, so some languages may only use one term to translate both these terms.

(See also: [free](#), [freedom](#), [liberty](#), [ransom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

reveal, revelation

Definition:

The term “reveal” means to cause something to be known. A “revelation” is something that has been made known.

- In the Bible, the term “reveal” is often used to describe how God has made himself known to people.
- God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
- God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
- When Paul says that he received the gospel by “revelation from Jesus Christ,” he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
- The New Testament book “Revelation” is about God revealing events that will happen in the end times. He revealed this to the apostle John through visions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “reveal” could include, “make known” or “disclose” or “show clearly.”
- Depending on the context, possible ways to translate “revelation” could be, “communication from God” or “things that God has revealed” or “teachings about God.” It is best to keep the meaning of “reveal” in this word.
- The phrase, “where there is no revelation” could be translated as, “when God does not reveal himself to people” or “when God has not spoken to people” or “among people whom God has not communicated to.”

(See also: [good news, gospel](#), [good news, gospel](#), [dream](#), [vision](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

reward

Definition:

The term “reward” refers to what a person receives because of something he has done, either good or bad. “To reward” someone is to give someone something he deserves.

- A reward can be a good or positive thing that a person receives because of doing something well or because he has obeyed God.
- Sometimes a reward can refer to negative things that may result from bad behavior, such as the statement, “the reward of the wicked.” In this context, “reward” refers to punishment or negative consequences from sinful actions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “reward” could be translated as “payment” or “something that is deserved” or “punishment.”
- “To reward” someone could be translated by “to repay” or “to punish” or “to give what is deserved.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to wages. A reward is not specifically about earning money as part of a job.

(See also: [punish](#), [punishment](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

righteous, righteousness

Definition:

The terms “righteous” and “righteousness” refer to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people who the Bible calls “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous based on Jesus’ righteousness.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as, “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When referring to people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase, “the righteous” could also be translated as, “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means, “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good
- Sometimes “the righteous” is used figuratively and refers to “people who think they are good” or “people who seem to be righteous.”

(See also: [good](#), [goodness](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-02]** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **[04-08]** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God’s promise.
- **[17-02]** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **[23-01]** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **[50-10]** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.”

right hand

Definition:

The figurative expression “right hand” refers to the place of honor or strength on the right side of a ruler or other important individual.

- The right hand is also used as a symbol of power, authority, or strength.
- The Bible describes Jesus as sitting “at the right hand of” God the Father as the head of the body of believers (the Church) and in control as ruler of all creation.
- A person’s right hand was used to show special honor when placed on the head of someone being given a blessing (as when the patriarch Jacob blessed Joseph’s son Ephraim).
- To “serve at the right hand” of someone means to be the one whose service is especially helpful and important to that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- Sometimes the term “right hand” literally refers to a person’s right hand, as when Roman soldiers put a staff into Jesus’ right hand to mock him. This should be translated using the term that the language uses to refer to this hand.
- Regarding figurative uses, if an expression that includes the term “right hand” does not have the same meaning in the project language, then consider whether that language has a different expression with the same meaning.
- The expression “at the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of” or “in the place of honor beside” or “in the position of strength” or “ready to help.”
- Ways to translate “with his right hand” could include, “with authority” or “using power” or “with his amazing strength.”
- The figurative expression “his right hand and his mighty arm” uses two ways of emphasizing God’s power and great strength. One way to translate this expression could be, “his amazing strength and mighty power.” (See: [Parallelism](#))
- The expression “their right hand is falsehood” could be translated by, “even the most honorable thing about them is corrupted by lies” or “their place of honor is corrupted by deception” or “they use lies to make themselves powerful.”
- In Psalm 105:9, God calls for an accuser to be at the “right hand” of a wicked leader sent to punish his rebellious people. This could be translated as, “appoint an accuser to have the place of honor beside that wicked leader” or “appoint an accuser to help that wicked leader punish them.”

(See also: [accuse](#), [accusation](#), [accuser](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#), [mighty](#), [might](#), [punish](#), [punishment](#), [rebel](#), [rebellious](#), [rebellion](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

ruler, rulers, rule

Definition:

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group.

- In the Old Testament, a king was also referred to with the general term “ruler,” as in the phrase, “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God is referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action “to rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It means the same thing as “reign” when referring a king ruling.

(See also: [authority](#), [governor](#), [govern](#), [proconsul](#), [government](#), [king](#), [synagogue](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sacrifice, offering

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.
- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin. Animal sacrifices could never do that.
- The figurative expression “offer yourselves as a living sacrifice” means, “live your life in complete obedience to God, giving up everything in order to serve him.”

Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action, “to sacrifice” could be translated as, “to give up something valuable” or “to kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be, “As you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal that is offered on an altar.”

(See also: [altar](#), [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#), [drink offering](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [fellowship offering](#), [freewill offering](#) [peace offering](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [sin offering](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-14]** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.

- [05-06] "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- [05-09] God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- [13-09] Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- [17-06] David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- [48-06] Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- [48-08] But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- [49-11] Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

salvation

Definition:

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated using the word “save” or “rescue” as in, “when God saves people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God will rescue his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as, “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as, “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: [save](#), [safe](#), [Savior](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Satan, devil, evil one

Facts:

The devil is a spirit being that God created, but he rebelled against God and became God's enemy. The devil is also called "Satan" and "the evil one."

- The devil hates God and all that God created, because he wants to take the place of God and be worshiped as God.
- Satan tempts people to rebel against God.
- God sent his Son, Jesus to rescue people from Satan's control.
- The name "Satan" means "adversary" or "enemy."
- The word "devil" means "accuser."

Translation Suggestions:

- The word "devil" could also be translated as "the accuser" or "the evil one" or "the king of evil spirits" or "the chief evil spirit."
- "Satan" can be translated as "Opponent" or "Adversary" or some other name that shows that he is the devil.
- These terms should be translated differently from demon and evil spirit.
- Consider how these terms are translated in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#), [tempt](#), [temptation](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[21-01]** The snake who deceived Eve was **Satan**. The promise meant that the Messiah who would come would defeat **Satan** completely.
- **[25-06]** Then **Satan** showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their glory and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."
- **[25-08]** Jesus did not give in to **Satan's** temptations, so **Satan** left him.
- **[33-06]** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the word of God. The path is a person who hears God's word, but does not understand it, and the **devil** takes the word from him."
- **[38-07]** After Judas took the bread, **Satan** entered into him.

- **[48-04]** God promised that one of Eve's descendants would crush **Satan's** head, and **Satan** would wound his heel. This meant that **Satan** would kill the Messiah, but God would raise him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of **Satan** forever.
- **[49-15]** God has taken you out of **Satan's** kingdom of darkness and put you into God's kingdom of light.
- **[50-09]** "The weeds represent the people who belong to the **evil one**. The enemy who planted the weeds represents the **devil**."
- **[50-10]** "When the world ends, the angels will gather together all the people who belong to the **devil** and throw them into a raging fire, where they will cry and grind their teeth in terrible suffering."
- **[50-15]** When Jesus returns, he will completely destroy **Satan** and his kingdom. He will throw **Satan** into hell where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

save, safe

Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” it means that through Jesus’ death on the cross, God has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include, “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression, “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”

(See also: [cross](#), [deliver](#), [deliverer](#), [deliverance](#), [punish](#), [punishment](#), [salvation](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-08]** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **[11-02]** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **[12-05]** Moses told the Israelites, “Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you.”
- **[12-13]** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **[16-17]** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **[44-08]** “You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!”
- **[47-11]** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, “What must I do to be **saved**?” Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**.”

- [49-12] Good works cannot **save** you.
- [49-13] God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

Savior

Facts:

The term “Savior” refers to a person who saves or rescues others from danger. It can also refer to someone who gives strength to others or provides for them.

- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as Israel’s Savior because he often rescued them from their enemies, gave them strength, and provided them with what they needed to live.
- In the New Testament, “Savior” is used as a description or title for Jesus Christ because he saves people from being eternally punished for their sin. He also saves them from being controlled by their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, “Savior” should be translated with a word that is related to the words “save” and “salvation.”
- Ways to translate this term could include, “the One who saves” or “God, who saves” or “who delivers from danger” or “who rescues from enemies” or “Jesus, the one who rescues (people) from sin.”

(See also: [deliver](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [salvation](#), [save](#), [safe](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

servant, slave, slavery

Definition:

The word for “servant” can also mean “slave” and refers to a person who works for another person, either by choice or by force. The surrounding text usually makes it clear whether a servant or a slave is being referred to.

- In Bible times, there was less of a difference between a servant and a slave than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of their master’s household and many were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.
- A slave is a kind of servant who is the property of the person he works for. The person who buys a slave is called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treat their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treat their slaves very well, like a servant who is a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the Bible, the phrase “I am your servant” was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It does not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God are often referred to as his “servants.”
- In the New Testament, people who obey God through faith in Christ are often called his “servants.”
- Christians are also called “slaves to righteousness,” which is a metaphor that compares the commitment to obey God to a slave’s commitment to obeying his master. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [commit](#), [committed](#), [commitment](#), [enslave](#), [in bondage](#), [household](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [serve](#), [service](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[06-01]** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **[08-04]** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **[09-13]** ”I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt.”

- [19-10] Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- [29-03] "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- [35-06] "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- [47-04] The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- [50-04] Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

serve, service

Definition:

The term “serve” means to do things to help other people. It can also mean to “worship.”

- In the context of a woman serving her guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.”
- When Jesus told the disciples to serve the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute to” or “hand out to” or “give to.”¹[comment_5adb7a6af206fdb7787dd58f4b215940](#)
- The term “service” refers to the act of serving. It can also be used to refer to a “meeting” of Christians as they worship God together.
- The term “serve” can also be translated as, “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- “To serve God” can be translated as “to worship and obey God” or “to do the work that God has commanded.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables.
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses.
- Now they “serve” the new covenant, that is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about this in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

set apart

Definition:

The term “set apart” means to be separated from something to fulfill a certain purpose.

- The Israelites were set apart for service to God.
- The Holy Spirit commanded the Christians at Antioch to set apart Paul and Barnabas for the work God wanted them to do.
- A believer who is “set apart” for service to God is “dedicated to” fulfilling God’s will.
- One meaning of the term “holy” is to be set apart as belonging to God and being separated from the sinful ways of the world.
- The term “sanctify” means to set apart a person for God’s service.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “to set apart” could include, “to specially select” or “to separate from among you” or “to take aside to do a special task.”
- To “be set apart” could be translated as “be separated (from)” or “be specially appointed (for).”

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [sanctify](#), [sanctification](#), [appoint](#), [appointed](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a sinful nature that controls them.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- “To sin” could also be translated as “to disobey God” or “to do wrong.”
- Depending on the context, “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include, “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- In expressions like “slaves to sin” or “ruled by sin,” the term “sin” could be translated as “disobedience” or “evil desires and actions.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [flesh](#), [tax collector](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- * **[03-15]** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- * **[13-12]** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- * **[20-01]** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- * **[21-13]** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- * **[35-01]** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- * **[38-05]** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- * **[43-11]** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- * **[48-08]** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- * **[49-17]** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

Son of God, the Son, Son

Facts:

The term “Son of God” refers to Jesus, the Word of God who came into the world as a human being. He is also often referred to as “the Son.”

- The Son of God has the same nature as God the Father, and is fully God.
- God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit are all of one essence.
- Unlike human sons, the Son of God has always existed.
- In the beginning, the Son of God was active in creating the world, along with the Father and the Holy Spirit.
- Because Jesus is God’s Son, he loves and obeys his Father, and his Father loves him.

Translation Suggestions:

- For the term, “Son of God,” it is best to translate “Son” with the same word the language would naturally use to refer to a human son.
- Make sure the word used to translate “son” fits with the word used to translate “father” and that these words are the most natural ones used to express a true father-son relationship in the project language.
- Using capital letters to begin “Son” will help show that this is talking about God.
- The phrase “the Son” is a shortened form of “the Son of God”, especially when in the same context as “the Father.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#), [God](#), [God the Father](#), [heavenly Father](#), [Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [en:obe:kt:jesus]], [son](#), [son of](#), [sons of God](#)))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [22-05] The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the **Son of God**.”
- [24-09] God had told John, “The Holy Spirit will come down and rest on someone you baptize. That person is **the Son of God**.”?
- [31-08] The disciples were amazed. They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, “Truly, you are **the Son of God**.”
- [37-05] Martha answered, “Yes, Master! I believe you are the Messiah, the **Son of God**.”

- **[42-10]** So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, **the Son**, and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **[46-06]** Right away, Saul began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, ”Jesus is the **Son of God!**”
- **[49-09]** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only **Son** so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.

spirit, spiritual

Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. “Spirit” can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person’s spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, “spiritual food” refers to God’s teachings that give nourishment to a person’s spirit, “spiritual wisdom” refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in, “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.”
- Examples of “spirit” as an attitude or emotion would include “spirit of fear” or “spirit of jealousy.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include, “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person as in, “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as, “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as, “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as, “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The figurative expression “spiritual milk” could also be translated as, “basic teachings from God” or “God’s teachings that nourish the spirit (like milk does).”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- A “spiritual gift” could be translated as, “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives.”

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [soul](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-03]** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **[40-07]** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **[45-05]** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **[48-07]** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

suffer, suffering

Definition:

The terms “suffer” and “suffering” refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

- When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.
- Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
- Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
- The phrase “suffer me” means to “bear with me” or “hear me out” or “listen patiently.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “suffer” can be translated as “feel pain” or “endure difficulty” or “experience hardships” or “go through difficult and painful experiences.”
- Depending on the context, “suffering” could be translated as “extremely difficult circumstances” or “severe hardships” or “experiencing hardship” or “time of painful experiences.”
- The phrase “suffer thirst” could be translated as, “experience thirst” or “suffer with thirst.”
- To “suffer violence” could also be translated as “undergo violence” or “be harmed by violent acts.”

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [09-13] God said, “I have seen the **suffering** of my people.”
- [38-12] Jesus prayed three times, “My Father, if it is possible, please let me not have to drink this cup of **suffering**.”
- [42-03] He (Jesus) reminded them that the prophets said the Messiah would **suffer** and be killed, but would rise again on the third day.
- [42-07] He (Jesus) said, “It was written long ago that the Messiah would **suffer**, die, and rise from the dead on the third day.”
- [44-05] “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to fulfill the prophecies that the Messiah would **suffer** and die.”
- [46-04] God said, “I have chosen him (Saul) to declare my name to the unsaved. I will show him how much he must **suffer** for my sake.”
- [50-17] He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more **suffering**, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.

sword

Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- The blade of a sword in ancient times was around 60 to 91 centimeters long.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called “double-edged” or “two-edged” swords.
- Jesus’ disciples had swords they planned to use to defend themselves. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest’s servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God’s word. God’s teachings in the Bible expose people’s innermost thoughts and convict them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, “God’s word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin.”
- Another figurative use of this term is in the book of Psalms where the tongue or speech of a person is compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as, “the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone.”
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a “sharp weapon” or “long knife.” Some translations may decide to include a picture of a sword.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [James \(brother of Jesus\)](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [tongue](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

teacher, Teacher

Definition:

A teacher is a person who gives other people new information. Teachers help others to obtain and use both knowledge and skills.

- In the Bible, the word “teacher” is used in a special sense to refer to someone who teaches about God. It does not refer to a school teacher.
- People who learn from a teacher are called “students” or “disciples.”
- In some Bible translations, this term is capitalized (“Teacher”) when it is used as a title for Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- The usual word for a teacher can be used to translate this term, unless that word is only used for a school teacher.
- Some cultures may have a special title that is used for religious teachers, such as “Sir” or “Rabbi” or “Preacher.”

(See also: [disciple](#), [preach](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [27-01] One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “**Teacher**, what must I do to inherit eternal life?”
- [28-01] One day a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good **Teacher**, what must I do to have eternal life?”
- [37-02] After the two days had passed, Jesus said to his disciples, “Let’s go back to Judea.” “But **Teacher**,” the disciples answered, “Just a short time ago the people there wanted to kill you!”
- [38-14] Judas came to Jesus and said, “Greetings, **Teacher**,” and kissed him.
- [49-03] Jesus was also a great **teacher**, and he spoke with authority because he is the Son of God.

temple

Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” refers to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it refers only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- During the reign of King Solomon he built the Temple, which was the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- When it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations will translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it clear what is being referred to.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God’s holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [Solomon](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [tabernacle](#), [courtyard](#), [court Zion](#), [Mount Zion house](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-06]** David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **[18-02]** In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.
- **[20-07]** They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.

- [20-13] When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- [25-04] Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- [40-07] When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

trespass**Definition:**

To “trespass” means to break a law or to violate the rights of another person.

- A trespass can be a violation of moral or civil law or a sin committed against another person.
- This term is related to the terms “sin,” and “transgress,” especially as it relates to disobeying God.
- All sins are trespasses against God.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “to trespass against” could be translated as “to sin against” or “to break the rule.”
- Some languages may have an expression like “cross the line” that could be used to translate “trespass.”
- Consider how this term fits with the meaning of the surrounding Bible text and compare it to other terms that have a similar meaning, such as “transgress” and “sin.”

(See also: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [iniquity](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [transgress](#), [transgression](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

true, truth, come true

Definition:

The terms “true” and “truth” refer to concepts that are facts, events that actually happened, and statements that were actually said.

- True things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- The truth is an understanding, belief, fact, or statement that is true.
- The expression “come true” or “came true” is an expression that means that a prophecy actually happened as it was predicted that it would.
- Truth includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God’s truth in the words that he spoke.
- God’s word is truth. It tells about things that actually happened and teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term “true” could also be translated by “real” or “factual” or “correct” or “right” or “certain” or “genuine.”
- Ways to translate the term “truth” could include, “what is true” or “fact” or “certainty” or “principle.”
- The expression “come true” could also be translated as, “actually happen” or “be fulfilled” or “happen as predicted.”
- The expression “tell the truth” or “speak the truth” could also be translated as, “say what is true” or “tell what really happened” or “say things that are reliable.”
- To “accept the truth” could be translated as, “believe what is true about God.”
- In an expression such as, “worship God in spirit and in truth,” the expression “in truth” could also be translated by, “faithfully obeying what God has taught us.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [fulfill](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [understand](#), [understanding](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-04]** The snake responded to the woman, “That is not **true**! You will not die.”
- **[14-06]** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, “It is **true** that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!”
- **[16-01]** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the **true** God.

- [31-08] They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God."
- [39-10] "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"

unbeliever, unbelief

Definition:

The term “unbelief” refers to not believing something or someone.

- In the Bible, “unbelief” refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one’s Savior.
- A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an “unbeliever.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “unbelief” could include, “lack of faith” or “not believing.”
- The term “unbeliever” could be translated as “person who does not believe in Jesus” or “someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior.”

(See also: [believer](#), [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [trust](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

uncircumcised, uncircumcision

Definition:

The terms “uncircumcised” and “uncircumcision” refer to a male who has not been physically circumcised. These terms are also used figuratively.

- Egypt was a nation that also required circumcision. So when God talks about Egypt being defeated by the “uncircumcised,” he is referring to people whom the Egyptians despised for not being circumcised.
- The Bible refers to people who have an “uncircumcised heart” or who are “uncircumcised in heart.” This is a figurative way of saying that these people are not God’s people, and are stubbornly disobedient to him.

Translation Suggestions:

- If a word for circumcision is used or known in the language, “uncircumcised” could be translated as “not circumcised.”
- The expression, “the uncircumcision” could be translated as “people who are not circumcised” or “people who do not belong to God,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate figurative senses of this term could include, “not God’s people” or “rebellious like those who don’t belong to God” or “people who have no sign of belonging to God.”
- The expression “uncircumcised in heart” could be translated as, “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to believe.” However, if possible it is best to keep the expression or a similar one since spiritual circumcision is an important concept.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [circumcise](#), [circumcision](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

understand, understanding

Definition:

The term “understand” means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term “understanding” can refer to “knowledge” or “wisdom” or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term “understand” could be translated by “know” or “believe” or “comprehend” or “know what (something) means.”
- Often the term “understanding” can be translated by “knowledge” or “wisdom” or “insight.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [know](#), [knowledge](#), [make known](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

walk

Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as, “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#), [\[:en:obe:other:obey\]](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

will of God

Definition:

The “will of God” refers to God’s desires and plans.

- God’s will especially relates to his interactions with people and how he wants people to respond to him.
- It also refers to his plans or desires for the rest of his creation.
- The term “to will” means “to determine” or “to desire.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The “will of God” could also be translated as, “what God desires” or “what God has planned” or “God’s purpose” or “what is pleasing to God.”

Bible References:

Waiting

wine, wineskin, new wine**Definition:**

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also refer to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as, “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include, “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: [grape](#), [vine](#), [vineyard](#), [winepress](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

smashed

wise, wisdom

Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- In the Bible, the term “worldly wisdom” is a figurative way of referring to what people in this world think is wise, but which is actually foolish.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love and patience.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include, “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See: [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [fruit](#), [fruitful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-05]** She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- **[18-01]** When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- **[23-09]** Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- **[45-01]** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures or “Old Testament.” These writings were God’s message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people can still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God’s word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include, “the message of Yahweh” or “God’s message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God’s words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as, “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”
- When “word” occurs alone, it could be translated as “message” or “God’s word” or “teachings,” depending on the context. Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.

(See also: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [word](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[25-07]** In **God’s word** he commands his people, ‘Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- **[33-06]** So Jesus explained, “The seed is the **word of God**.”

- [42-03] Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- [42-07] Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled." Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**.
- [45-10] Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- [48-12] But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**.
- [49-18] God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

word of truth

Definition:

The term “word of truth” is another way of referring to God’s word or teaching.

- God’s word of truth includes everything that God has taught people about himself, his creation and his plan of salvation through Jesus.
- This term emphasizes the fact that what God has told us is true, faithful, and real.

Translation Suggestions:

- This could be translated as, “God’s true message” or “God’s word, which is true.”
- It is important for the translation of this term to include the meaning of being true.

(See also: [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#), [word](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

works, deeds, work, acts

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “works,” “deeds,” and “acts” are used to refer generally to things that God or people do.

- The term “work” refers to doing labor or anything that is done to serve other people.
- God’s “works” and the “work of his hands” are expressions that refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place. The terms “deeds” and “acts” are also used to refer to God’s miracles in expressions such as, “mighty acts” or “marvelous deeds.”
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.
- The Holy Spirit empowers believers to do good works, which are also called “good fruit.”
- People are not saved by their good works; they are saved through faith in Jesus.
- A person’s “work” can be what he does to earn a living or to serve God. The Bible also refers to God as “working.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “works” or “deeds” could be, “actions” or “things that are done.”
- When referring to God’s “works” or “deeds” and the “work of his hands,” these expressions could also be translated as, “miracles” or “mighty acts” or “amazing things he does.”
- The expression, “the work of God” could be translated as, “the things that God is doing” or “the miracles God does” or “the amazing things that God does” or “everything God has accomplished.”
- The term “work” can just be the singular of “works” as in, “every good work” or “every good deed.”
- The term “work” can also have the broader meaning of “service” or “ministry.” For example, the expression, “your work in the Lord” could also be translated as, “what you do for the Lord.”
- The expression, “examine your own work” could also be translated as, “make sure what you are doing is God’s will” or “make sure that what you are doing pleases God.”
- The expression “the work of the Holy Spirit” could be translated as, “the empowering of the Holy Spirit” or “the ministry of the Holy Spirit” or “the things that the Holy Spirit does.”

(See: [fruit](#), [fruitful](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

world, worldly

Definition:

The term “world” usually refers to the part of the universe where people live: the earth. The term “worldly” describes the evil values and behaviors of people living in this world.

- In its most general sense, the term “world” refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.
- In many contexts, “world” actually means, “people in the world.”
- Sometimes it is implied that this refers to the evil people on earth or the people who do not obey God.
- The apostles also used “world” to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. This can include self-righteous religious practices which are based on human efforts.
- People and things characterized by these values are said to be “worldly.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “world” could also be translated as, “universe” or “people of this world” or “corrupt things in the world” or “evil attitudes of people in the world.”
- The phrase “all the world” often means “many people” and refers to the people living in a certain region. For example, “all the world came to Egypt” could be translated as, “many people from the surrounding countries came to Egypt” or “people from all the countries surrounding Egypt came there.”
- Another way to translate “all the world went to their hometown to be registered in the Roman census” would be, “many of the people living in regions ruled by the Roman empire went...”
- Depending on the context, the term “worldly” could be translated as, “evil” or “sinful” or “selfish” or “ungodly” or “corrupt” or “influenced by the corrupt values of people in this world.”
- The phrase “saying these things in the world” can be translated as “saying these things to the people of the world.”
- In other contexts, “in the world” could also be translated as, “living among the people of the world” or “living among ungodly people.”

(See also: [corrupt](#), [corruption](#), [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#), [ungodly](#), [godless](#), [ungodliness](#), [godlessness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

wrath, fury**Definition:**

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. It especially refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.

- In the Bible, "wrath" usually refers to God's anger toward those who sin against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include, "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage. God's wrath is just and holy.

(See: [judge](#), [judgment](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

translationAcademy

Abstract Nouns

This answers the question: What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Parts of Speech*
- *Sentences*

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even to relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, injury, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it. For example, "What is its *weight*?" could be expressed as "How much does it *weigh*?" or "How *heavy* is it?"

Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **ABSTRACT NOUNS** are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even to relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, and weight.

Abstract nouns allow us to express thoughts about ideas in fewer words than if we did not have those nouns. For example, we can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But if English did not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," then we would have to make a longer sentence to express the same meaning. We would have to say, for example, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned."

Abstract nouns also allow us to refer to a situation without telling more details about it than we want to tell. For example, we can say "I got here late because there was an accident on the highway." "Accident" is an abstract noun. If it does not matter whose accident it was, or what kind of accident it was, then it can be better if I do not have to say these things about it.

Reason this is a translation issue: The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will have other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs, that express some of the meaning in the abstract noun.

Examples from the Bible

from *childhood* you have known the sacred writings (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone is a child.

But *godliness with contentment* is great *gain*. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)

The abstract nouns “godliness” and “contentment” refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun “gain” refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today *salvation* has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “salvation” here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *slowness* to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “slowness” refers how slowly something is done.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the *purposes* of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun.

- **from *childhood* you have known the sacred writings** (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)
 - ”Ever since *you were a child* you have known the sacred writings.”
- **But *godliness with contentment* is great *gain*.** (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)
 - ”But *being godly* and *content* is very *beneficial*.”
 - ”But we *benefit* greatly when we *are godly* and *content*.”
 - ”But we *benefit* greatly when we *honor and obey God* and when we are *happy with what we have*.
- **Today *salvation* has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham.** (Luke 19:9 ULB)
 - ”Today the people in this house *have been saved*...”
 - ”Today God *has saved* the people in this house...”

- **The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *slowness* to be** (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)
 - "The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *moving slowly* to be"

- **He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the *purposes* of the heart.** (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)
 - "He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal *the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.*"

Active or Passive

This answers the question: What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Sentence Structure*
- *Verbs*

Some languages have both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences the subject is the one that the action is done to. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- ACTIVE: *My father* built the house in 2010.
- PASSIVE: *The house* was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not have passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when not to.

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

ACTIVE: *My father* built the house in 2010.

PASSIVE: *The house* was built by my father in 2010.

PASSIVE: *The house* was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

All languages have active forms. Some languages have passive forms, and some do not. The passive form is not used for the same reasons in all of the languages that have it.

Purposes for the passive:

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples from the Bible

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants *were killed*, and your servant Uriah the Hittite *was killed* too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULB)

This means that the enemies shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal *was broken down* ... (Judges 6:28 ULB)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down.

No stonework *was seen* there. (1 Kings 6:18 ULB)

This means that no one saw stonework there. The point is that no stonework was done there.

Translation Strategies

If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action.
3. Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action.

- **A loaf of bread *was given* him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
 - *The king's servants gave* Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead use a generic expression like "they," or "people," or "someone."

- **It would be better for him if a millstone *were put* around his neck and he *were thrown* into the sea** (Luke 17:2 ULB)
 - It would be better for him if *they were to put* a millstone around his neck and *throw* him into the sea.
 - It would be better for him if *someone were to put* a heavy stone around his neck and *throw* him into the sea.

3. Use a different verb in an active sentence.

- **A loaf of bread *was given* him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
 - He *received* a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Abstract Nouns*
- *Word Order*

Apostrophe

This answers the question: What is the figure of speech called apostrophe?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Apostrophe is a figure of speech in which a speaker turns his attention away from his listeners and speaks to someone or something that he knows cannot hear him. This calls his listener's attention to his feelings toward that person or thing.

Mountains of Gilboa, Let there not be dew or rain on you (2 Samuel 1:21 ULB)

King Saul was killed on Mount Gilboa, and David sang a sad song about it. By telling the mountains that he wanted them to have no dew or rain, he showed how sad he was.

Description

Apostrophe is a figure of speech in which a speaker turns his attention away from his listeners and speaks to someone or something that he knows cannot hear him. This calls his listener's attention to his feelings toward that person or thing.

Reason this is a translation issue: Many languages do not use apostrophe, and readers could be confused by it. They may wonder who the speaker is talking to.

Examples from the Bible

Come now, you who are rich, cry out loud because of the miseries coming upon you.
(James 5:1 ULB)

James wrote to the church, which was made up of poor people, as if rich people could hear him, showing his anger about what rich people were doing.

The man of God cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh and said, "Altar, altar, Yahweh says, '... on you they will burn men's bones.'" (1 Kings 13:2 ULB)

The man of God spoke as if the altar could hear him, but he really wanted the king, who was standing there, to hear him.

Translation Strategies

If apostrophe would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option.

1. Have the speaker express his feelings toward the thing or idea without speaking directly to it.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If this way of speaking would be confusing to your people, you may preserve the meaning of the apostrophe and let the speaker continue speaking to the people that are listening to him.

- **The man of God cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh and said, "Altar, altar, Yahweh says, ' ... on you they will burn men's bones.' " (1 Kings 13:2 ULB)**
 - "The man of God said, "This is what Yahweh says *about this altar*' ... They will burn men's bones on *it*."

Double Negatives

This answers the question: What are double negatives?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Parts of Speech*
- *Sentences*

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that express the meaning of “not.”

It is *not* that we do *not* have authority (2 Thessalonians 3:9)

Be sure of this—wicked people will *not* go *unpunished* (Proverbs 11:21)

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

Description

Most languages express the negative near the verb or at the beginning or end of the sentence. Some languages also have prefixes or suffixes that express the negative as in “*unhappy*,” “*impossible*,” and “*useless*.” Some languages can also express the negative with pronouns like “none,” “nothing,” and “no one,” with adverbs like “nowhere,” and with prepositions like “without.”

A double negative occurs when a sentence has two words that express the meaning of “not.”

It is *not* that we do *not* have authority (2 Thessalonians 3:9 ULB)

And this better confidence did *not* happen *without* the taking of an oath, (Hebrews 7:20 ULB)

Be sure of this—wicked people will *not* go *unpunished* (Proverbs 11:21 ULB)

Reason this is a translation issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as Spanish, a double negative emphasizes the negative. The following Spanish sentence *No ví a nadie* is literally “I did not see no one.” It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one.” It emphasizes the negative, and means “I did not see anyone.”
- In some languages a double negative simply means a positive. So “She is not unattractive” means “She is attractive.”
- In some language the double negative weakens the adjective. So “She is not unattractive” means “She is a little bit attractive.”
- In some languages, such as the languages of the Bible, the double negative often strengthens the adjective. So “She is not unattractive” means “She is very attractive.”

To translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

Examples from the Bible

so that they may *not* be *unfruitful*. (Titus 3:14 ULB)

This means “so that they will be fruitful.”

All things were made through him and *without* him there was *not* one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULB)

By using a double negative John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything.

Translation Strategies

If double negatives are natural and are used to express the positive in your language, consider using them. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

1. If the double negative simply expresses the positive, remove the two negatives.
2. If the double negative emphasizes the positive, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the double negative simply expresses the positive, remove the two negatives.
 - **For we do *not* have a high priest who cannot feel sympathy for our weaknesses** (Hebrews 4:15 ULB)
 - “For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses”
 - **so that they may *not* be *unfruitful*** (Titus 3:14 ULB)
 - “so that they may be fruitful”
2. If the double negative emphasizes the positive, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “certainly.”
 - **Be sure of this—wicked people will *not* go *unpunished*** (Proverbs 11:21 ULB)
 - “Be sure of this—wicked people will *certainly* be punished”
 - **All things were made through him and *without* him there was *not* one thing made that has been made.** (John 1:3 ULB)

- "All things were made through him. He made *absolutely* everything that has been made."

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Verbs*

Doublet

This answers the question: What are doublets and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

A doublet is a pair of words used together that mean nearly the same nearly thing. In some languages people do not use doublets, or they may use them only in certain situations. Translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning.

King David was *old* and *advanced in years*. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean “very old.”

Description

We are using the word doublet to refer to two words or very short phrases that mean the same thing and that are used in the same phrase. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Often they are used to emphasize or intensify the idea expressed by the two words.

Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but they may do it for a reason that would not fit in a particular verse.

Examples from the Bible

King David was *old* and *advanced in years*. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

This means that he was “very old.”

he attacked two men *more righteous* and *better* than himself (1 Kings 2:32 ULB)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare *false* and *deceptive* words (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

This means that they had prepared “many false things to say.”

as of a lamb *without blemish* and *without spot*. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any blemish—not even one.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using one. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use your culture’s way of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate only one of the words.

- **You have decided to prepare *false* and *deceptive* words** (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

- “You have decided to prepare *false* things to say.”

2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

- **King David was *old* and *advanced in years***. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

- “King David was *very old*.”

3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

- **a lamb *without blemish* and *without spot***. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB) - English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

- “a lamb *without any blemish at all*”

Euphemism

This answers the question: What is a Euphemism?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private. Its purpose is to avoid offending the people who hear or read it.

Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable. Its purpose is to avoid offending the people who hear or read it.

they found Saul and his sons fallen on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULB)

This means that Saul and his sons were dead. It is euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

Reason this is a translation issue: Readers may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

Examples from the Bible

where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so he does not say specifically what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

whether we are awake or asleep (1 Thessalonians 5:10 ULB)

Paul refers to being dead as being “asleep” so that instead of thinking that they will never see their loved ones again in this life, his readers will remember that they will see them again when Jesus establishes his kingdom.

Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.

- **where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself** (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB) - Some languages might use euphemisms like these:
 - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet”
 - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to dig a hole”
 - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to have some time alone”

2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

- **whether we are awake or asleep** (1 Thessalonians 5:10 ULB)
 - “whether we are alive or dead”

Exclusive “We”

This answers the question: What is exclusive “we”?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Pronouns*

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an inclusive form that means “I and you” and an exclusive form that means “I and someone else but not you.” Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we” will need to understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of “we” to use.

Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but *not* you.” The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow



highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



Reason this is a translation issue - The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we”. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we” will need to understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of “we” to use.

Examples from the Bible

Forgive *us our* sins (Luke 11:4 ULB)

God has no sins to forgive; so languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

we have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to us (1 John 1:2 ULB)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Inclusive “We”*

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

This answers the question: What are assumed knowledge, implicit information, and explicit information?

Assumed knowledge is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. There are two types information.

- **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
- **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, although what he says may remind them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly is **implicit information**.

Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes *have holes*, and the birds of the sky *have nests*, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULB)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**. Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULB)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the

people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that because the people he was speaking to did not repent, they would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For *they do not wash their hands when they eat*. (Matthew 15:2 ULB)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. They were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit*

Hyperbole

This answers the question: What is hyperbole?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Hyperbole is a figure of speech in which the speaker shows that something is very important by describing it as larger or greater than it really is. He may greatly exaggerate something in order to show his strong feeling or opinion about it, or he may generalize the situation by using words like “every” or “all” to mean “many.”

Description

Hyperbole is a figure of speech in which the speaker shows that something is very important by describing it as larger or greater than it really is. There are two kinds of hyperbole:

1. Exaggeration: This is when a speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it.

Whoever does not *carry his own cross* and come after me cannot be my disciple. (Luke 14:27 ULB) - This is an exaggeration. It means that whoever wants to be Jesus’ disciple must be determined to follow him faithfully, even if his enemies were to kill that person.

2. Generalization: This is when a speaker uses words like “every” or “all” to mean something like “very many,” but not “every one.” (Some people may not call generalization like this “hyperbole.”)

Moses was educated in *all the learning of the Egyptians* (Acts 7:22 ULB) - This is a generalization. It means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught.

Reason this is a translation issue

If readers do not understand that a statement is a hyperbole, they may either think that something happened that did not happen, or they may think that the speaker or writer was saying something that is not true.

Examples from the Bible

Examples of Exaggeration

If your hand causes you to stumble, *cut it off*. It is better for you to enter into life maimed... (Mark 9:43 ULB)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should do whatever extreme things we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

If anyone comes to me and does not *hate* his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple. (Luke 14:26 ULB)

Because of many other things that Jesus said, we know that his use of the word “hate” here is hyperbole. He meant that we must not love even our own family members more than we love him. We must love him more than we love ourselves or anyone else.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops *as numerous as the sand on the seashore*. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration. It means that there were many, many soldiers in the Philistine army.

Examples of Generalization

They found him, and they said to him, “*Everyone* is looking for you.” (Mark 1:37 ULB)

The disciples told Jesus that everyone was looking looking for him. They probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for him, but that many people were looking for him, or that all of Jesus closest friends there were looking for him.

But as his anointing teaches you about *all things* and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULB)

This is a generalization. God’s Spirit teaches us about all things that we need to know.

Caution

Do not assume that something is hyperbole just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

... they saw Jesus *walking on the sea* and coming near the boat ... (John 6:19 ULB)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

... for *all* have sinned and come short of the glory of God. (Romans 3:23 ULB)

The word “all” here is not hyperbole. All humans have sinned. The only human who has never sinned is Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here is another option.

1. Express the meaning without the hyperbole. For example “all the people” could be translated as “large crowds of people.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Express the meaning without the hyperbole.

- **If anyone comes to me and does not *hate* his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple.** (Luke 14:26 ULB)
 - “If anyone comes to me and does not *love me much more than* he loves his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple.”
- **The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops *as numerous as the sand on the seashore*.** (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)
 - “The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and *a great number of troops*.”

Idiom

This answers the question: What are idioms and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

An idiom is a certain kind of figure of speech, the kind that usually cannot be correctly understood without being told its true meaning. Every language has them. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg (This means, “You are telling me a lie”)
- Do not push the envelope (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme”)
- This house is under water (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value”)
- We are painting the town red (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely”)

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture that uses it. Its meaning may be different from what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

he resolutely *set his face* to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULB)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you should *enter under my roof*. (Luke 7:6 ULB)

The words “enter under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Let these words go deeply into your ears (Luke 9:44 ULB)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

Purpose: An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that originally wrote the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.

Examples from the Bible

“Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, ”Look, we are your flesh and bone.”
(1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

The kings of the earth take their stand together (Psalm 2:2 ULB)

This means, “The kings on earth plan together.”

the one who lifts up my head” (Psalm 3:3 ULB)

This means, “the one who helps me.”

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

- **Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your flesh and bone.”** (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)
 - “...Look, we all belong to the same nation.”
- **he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem.** (Luke 9:51 ULB)
 - “He started to travel to Jerusalem, determined to reach it.”
- **I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof.** (Luke 7:6 ULB)
 - “I am not worthy that you should enter my house.”

2. Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

- **Let these words go deeply into your ears** (Luke 9:44 ULB)
 - “Be all ears when I say these words to you.”
- **”My eyes grow dim from grief** (Psalm 6:7ULB)
 - “I am crying my eyes out”

Inclusive “We”

This answers the question: What is inclusive “we”?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Pronouns*

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but not you.”

Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but not you.” The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



Reason this is a translation issue - The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we” will need understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of “we” to use.

Examples from the Bible

... the shepherds said one to each other, “Let *us* now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to *us*.” (Luke 2:15 ULB)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us”, they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, “Let *us* go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULB)

When Jesus said “us,” he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to.

Watch the video for computer (see <http://youtu.be/PrMC2jdqY0A>) or tablet/phone (see <http://youtu.be/2K2gFIPMFVk>).

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Exclusive “We”*

Irony

This answers the question: What is irony and how can I translate it?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Description

Irony is a figure of speech in which a person pretends to say what he really believes, when in fact he is saying what someone else believes, and he does it in a way that shows that other belief is wrong. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else's belief is foolish. It is often humorous.

Jesus answered them, "People who are in good health do not need a physician, only people who are sick need one. I did not come to call righteous people to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance." (Luke 5:31-32 ULB)

When Jesus spoke of "righteous people," he was not referring to people who were truly righteous. He was speaking to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous and who were criticizing him for welcoming sinners. Jesus implied that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

Reason this is a translation issue

- If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will not realize that the speaker is ridiculing the idea.

Examples from the Bible

After blindfolding him, they asked him, saying, "*Prophecy! Who is the one who hit you?*" (Luke 22:64ULB)

The fact that the soldiers were beating Jesus shows us that they did not believe that he was a prophet. They knew that other people thought that Jesus was a prophet, and they may have also thought that Jesus himself claimed to be a prophet. When they told him to prophecy, they were using irony. They were mocking him and implying that if he really was a prophet, then he should be able to tell who hit him without seeing them.

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. "Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled." (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULB)

People worshiped idols as if their idols had any knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not even speak, but he did this to mock the idols and rebuke the people for worshiping them.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?
 Can you find the way back to their houses for them?
Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;
"the number of your days is so large!" (Job 38:20, 21 ULB)

Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two underlined phrase above emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God's questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many many years later.

Translation Strategies

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here is another strategy.

1. Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.
2. Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony. The actual meaning of the irony is *not* found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal meaning of the speaker's words.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

- **After blindfolding him, they asked him, saying, "Prophesy! Who is the one who hit you?"** (Luke 22:64 ULB)
 - "After blindfolding him, they asked him, saying, "You call yourself a prophet. Then prophesy! Who hit you?"
 - "After blindfolding him, they said to him, "Prophesy! If you were really a prophet, you would be able to tell us who hit you."
- **I did not come to call *righteous people* to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.** (Luke 5:32 ULB)
 - "I did not come to call *people who think that they are righteous* to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance."

2. Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.

- **After blindfolding him, they asked him, saying, "Prophesy! Who is the one who hit you?"** (Luke 22:64 ULB)

- “After blindfolding him, they said to him, *”You are not a prophet because you cannot even tell us who struck you!”* ”
- **“Present your case,” says Yahweh; “present your best arguments for your idols,” says the King of Jacob. “Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.”** (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULB)
 - ” ‘Present your case,’ says Yahweh; ‘present your best arguments for your idols,’ says the King of Jacob. Your idols *cannot bring us their own arguments or even come forward to declare to us what will happen*. We cannot hear them because *they cannot speak* to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.”

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?

Can you find the way back to their houses for them?

***Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;
the number of your days is so large!*** (Job 38:20, 21 ULB)

- ”Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? *You act like you know how light and darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation!*”

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Litotes*

Litotes

This answers the question: What is litotes?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Litotes is a strong statement made by negative phrases to strengthen a positive meaning. It is used to show that the opposite idea is not true.

Description

Litotes is a strong statement made by negative phrases to strengthen a positive meaning. It is used to show that the opposite idea is not true.

Reason this is a translation issue

People who speak some languages do not use litotes and would fail to understand that the statement is strengthened. They might think that it is weakened or even canceled.

Examples from the Bible

For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was *not useless*, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULB)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was very worthwhile.

All things were made through him. *Without him was not one thing* made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULB)

By using litotes John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything.

Now when it became day, there was *no small excitement* among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULB)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a lot of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very concerned.)

And you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,
are *not the least* among the leaders of Judah,
for from you will come a ruler
who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULB)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a very important city.

Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

1. If the meaning would not be clear, say in a strong way what *is* true.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the meaning would not be clear, say in a strong way what *is* true.

- **For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was *not useless*,** (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULB)
 - "For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you *did much good*."
- **Now when it became day, there was *no small excitement* among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter.** (Acts 12:18 ULB)
 - "Now when it became day, there was *great excitement* among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter."
 - "Now when it became day, the soldiers were *very concerned* because of what had happened to Peter."

Merism

This answers the question: What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it.

Description

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it.

“I am the Alpha and the Omega,” says the Lord God, “the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.” (Revelation 1:8, ULB)

I am the Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End. (Revelation 22:13, ULB)

“Alpha and Omega” is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

I praise you, Father, Lord of *heaven and earth*, (Matthew 11:25 ULB)

“Heaven and earth” is a merism that includes everything that exists.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some readers may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

Examples from the Bible

From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULB)

This underlined phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means “everywhere.”

He will bless those who honor him, both *young and old*. (Psalm 115:13)

The underlined phrase is merism because it speaks of old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone.”

Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

- **I praise you, Father, Lord of *heaven and earth*** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
 - "I praise you, Father, Lord of *everything*"
- ***From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh's name should be praised.*** (Psalm 113:3 ULB)
 - "*In all places*, people should praise Yahweh."

2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

- **I praise you, Father, Lord of *heaven and earth*** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
 - "I praise you, Father, Lord of *everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth*"
- **He will bless those who honor him, both *young and old*.** (Psalm 115:13 ULB)
 - "He will bless *all those* who honor him, regardless of whether they are *young or old*."

Metaphor

This answers the question: What is a metaphor and how can I translate a sentence that has one?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- [Figures of Speech](#)
- [Simile](#)

Description

A metaphor is the use of words to speak of one thing as if it were a different thing. Sometimes a speaker does this in ways that are very common in the language. At other times, a speaker does this in ways that are less common in the language and that might even be unique.

1. First we will discuss very common metaphors.

The metaphors that are very common in a language are usually not very vivid. They may even be “dead.” Examples in English are “table leg,” “family tree,” and “the price of food is going up.” Examples in biblical languages are “hand” to mean “power,” “face” to mean “presence,” and “clothing” to mean emotions or moral qualities.

Metaphors like these are in constant use in the world’s languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, languages speak of abstract qualities, such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities, as if they were objects that can be seen or held, or as if they were body parts, or as if they were events that you can watch happen.

When these metaphors are used in their normal ways, the speaker and audience do not normally even regard them as figurative language. This is why, for example, it would be wrong to translate the English expression, “The price of petrol is going up” into another language in a way that would draw undeserved attention to it, because English speakers do not view it as a vivid expression, that is, as an unusual expression that carries meaning in an unusual manner.

For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor, please see [Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns](#) and the pages it will direct you to.

2. Next we will discuss the less common metaphors, metaphors that are sometimes even unique in a language.

The speaker usually produces metaphors of this kind in order to emphasize the importance of what he is talking about. For example,

For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.
(Malachi 4:2 ULB)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. And he speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people.

We call this kind of metaphor “live.” It is unique in the biblical languages, which means that it is very memorable.

Parts of a Metaphor

When talking about metaphors, it can be helpful to talk about their parts. The thing someone speaks of is called the **topic**. The thing he calls it is the **image**. The way that they are similar is the **point of comparison**.

In the metaphor below, the speaker describes the woman he loves as a rose. The woman (his “love”) is the topic and the red rose is the image. Both are beautiful and delicate.

- My love is a red, red rose.

1. Sometimes the **topic** and the **image** are both stated clearly.

Jesus said to them. *“I am the bread of life. He who comes to me will not hunger, and he who believes on me will never thirst.”* (John 6:35 ULB)

Jesus called himself the bread of life. The topic is “I” and the image is “bread.” Bread is a food that people ate all the time. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have spiritual life.

2. Sometimes only the **image** is stated clearly.

Produce *fruits* that are worthy of repentance (Luke 3:8 ULB)

The image here is “fruits”. The topic is not stated, but it is actions or behavior. Trees can produce good fruit or bad fruit, and people can produce good behavior or bad behavior. Fruits that are worthy of repentance are good behavior that is appropriate for people who have repented.

Purposes of this second kind of metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already know (the **image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something has a particular quality or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about one thing as they would feel toward another.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not realize that a word is being used as an image in a metaphor.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know how the topic and the image are alike.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.

- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than it was to the original audience.

Examples from the Bible

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

The example above has two metaphors. The topics are “we” and “you” and the images are “clay and ”potter.” Just as a potter takes clay and forms a jar or dish out of it, God makes us into what he wants us to be.

Jesus said to them, ”Take heed and beware of *the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.*” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we took no bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULB)

Jesus used a metaphor, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the image in his metaphor about the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is common and seems to be a normal way to say something in the biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.
2. If the target audience would think that the phrase should be understood literally, change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”
3. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
4. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
5. Or, if the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, simply state the truth that the metaphor was used to communicate.
6. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)
7. If the target audience would not know how the topic is like the image, state it clearly.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the metaphor is common and seems to be a normal way to say something in the biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

- **For after David had in his own generation served the desires of God, *he fell asleep*, was laid with his fathers, and saw decay,** (Acts 13:36 ULB)

- "For after David had in his own generation served the desires of God, *he died*, was laid with his fathers, and saw decay."

2. If the target audience would think that the phrase should be understood literally, change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding "like" or "as."

- **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are *like* clay. You are *like* a potter; and we all are the work of your hand."

3. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

- **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to *kick a goad*.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)

- "Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick against a pointed stick."

4. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

- **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *wood*. You are our *carver*; and we all are the work of your hand."

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *string*. You are the *weaver*; and we all are the work of your hand."

5. Or, if the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, simply state the truth that the metaphor was used to communicate.

- **I will make you become *fishers of men*.** (Mark 1:17 ULB)

- "I will make you become *people who gather men*."

- "Now you gather fish. I will make you *gather people*."

6. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

- **Yahweh lives; may *my rock* be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)

- "Yahweh lives; *He is my rock*. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

7. If the target audience would not know how the topic is like the image, state it clearly.

- **Yahweh lives; may *my rock* be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
 - "Yahweh lives; may he be praised because like a huge rock, *he shields me from my enemies*. May the God of my salvation be exalted."
- **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you *to kick a goad*.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)
 - "Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You *fight against me and hurt yourself* like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick."

To learn more about common metaphors read:

- [Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns](#)

Metonymy

This answers the question: What is a metonymy?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Many times the Bible uses metonymy. If you do not recognize it as a metonymy you will not understand the passage or worse yet, get the wrong understanding of the passage.

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which a thing or idea is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something it is associated with.

and *the blood* of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULB)

The blood represents Christ's death.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "*This cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULB)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a concrete object associated with it.

Reason this is a translation issue

- If a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples from the Bible

The Lord God will give him *the throne* of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULB)

A throne represents the authority of a king. Throne is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship" or, "reign." This means that God would make him become the king who was to follow King David.

Immediately his mouth was opened (Luke 1:64 ULB)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

who warned you to flee from *the wrath* that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULB)

The word “wrath” or “anger” is a metonym for “punishment.” God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here is an option.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

- **He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “*This cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.** (Luke 22:20 ULB)
 - “He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “*The wine in this cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”

2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

- **The Lord God will give him *the throne* of his father, David.** (Luke 1:32 ULB)
 - “The Lord God will give him *the kingly authority* of his father, David.”
 - “The Lord God will *make him king* like his ancestor, King David.”
- **who warned you to flee from *the wrath* to come?** (Luke 3:7 ULB)
 - “who warned you to flee from God’s coming *punishment*?”

To learn about some common metonymies, we suggest you read:

- [Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies](#)

Parallelism

This answers the question: What is parallelism?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Description

In **parallelism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use the kind of parallelism in which the two phrases mean the same thing. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning.

Examples from the Bible

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULB)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.

The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere,
keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULB)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

3. The second completes what is said in the first.

I lift up my voice to Yahweh,
and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULB)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

4. The second says something that contrasts with the first.

For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous,
but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULB)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

A gentle answer turns away wrath,
but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULB)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

Translation Strategies

1. For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases.
2. When the two clauses or phrases mean the same thing, some languages would not translate them both. (See [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#))

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(See [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#))

Next we recommend you learn about:

- [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#)

Personification

This answers the question: What is personification?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often speak this way because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see, such as wisdom and sin.

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

Some languages do not use personification, and some languages use it only in certain situations.

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see, such as wisdom, sin, and wind. For example:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about relationships between people and other people than about relationships between people and non-human things, such as wealth.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Reason this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples from the Bible

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. They are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would not be understood clearly, here are some strategies for dealing with it.

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.
2. Use the words “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.

- **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - God speaks of sin as a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

- “sin is at your door, waiting to attack you”

2. Use the words “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.

- **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - This can be translated with the word “as.”

- “sin is about to destroy you, just *as* a wild animal could harm a person.”

3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

- **even the winds and the sea obey him** (Matthew 8:27 ULB) - The men speak of the wind and the sea as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

- “He even controls the winds and the sea.”

Note: We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had human characteristics).

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Apostrophe*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns*

Simile

This answers the question: What is a simile?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be “like” the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were like sheep without a shepherd. (Matthew 9:36 ULB)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves*, so be as wise *as serpents* and harmless *as doves*. (Matthew 10:16 ULB)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper *than any two-edged sword*. (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)

God’s word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person’s flesh. God’s word is very effective in showing what is in a person’s heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people’s attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

Examples from the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, *as a good soldier of Christ Jesus*. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULB)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

for as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky, so will the Son of Man be in his day. (Luke 17:24 ULB)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lightning flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1 If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.
 - "See, I send you out among wicked people and you will be in danger from them as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves."
- **For the word of God is living and active and sharper *than any two-edged sword***. (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)
 - "For the word of God is living and active and *more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword*"

2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.
 - "See, I send you out *as chickens in the midst of wild dogs*,"
- **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
 - How often I wanted to gather your children together, as a mother closely watches over her infants, but you refused!
- **If you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard**, (Matthew 17:20 ULB)
 - "If you have faith even as small as a tiny seed"

3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB)
 - "See, I send you out and people will want to harm you."
- **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
 - "How often I wanted to protect you, but you refused!"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Metaphor*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns*

Synecdoche

This answers the question: What does the word synecdoche mean?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

Description

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

My soul exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULB)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul”, the part of herself that has emotions, to refer to her whole self.

the Pharisees said to him, “Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful ...?”
(Mark 2:24 ULB)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may understand the words literally.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example from the Bible

I looked on all the deeds that *my hands* had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the legs and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

- **My soul exalts the Lord.** (Luke 1:46 ULB)
 - "I exalt the Lord."
- **the Pharisees said to him** (Mark 2:24 ULB)
 - "a representative of the Pharisees said to him"
- **I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished** (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)
 - "I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Metonymy*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies*

Forms of You

This answers the question: What are the different forms of you?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Forms of 'You' - Singular*
- *Forms of 'You' - Dual/Plural*

Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some have other forms that refer to three or four people.

Watch the video for Singular, Dual, and Plural “you” for computer (see <http://youtu.be/cPtjzJ2Advk>) or tablet/phone (see <http://youtu.be/AVITfDEk8nc>).

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- *Forms of 'You' - Singular to a Crowd*

Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend. Watch the video on Formal and Informal ‘You’ on the **computer** or on the **tablet/phone**. For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- *Forms of “You” - Formal or Informal*

Translating Son and Father

This answers the question: Why are these concepts important in referring to God?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Create Faithful Translations*
- *Son of God and God the Father*

unfoldingWord supports only Bible translations that represent these concepts when they refer to God.

“Father” and “Son” are names that God calls himself in the Bible.

The Bible shows that God called Jesus his Son.

After he was baptized, Jesus came up immediately from the water, and... a voice came out of the heavens saying, *“This is my beloved Son. I am very pleased with him.”* (Matthew 3:16-17 ULB)

The Bible shows that Jesus called God his Father.

Jesus said, *“I praise you Father, Lord of heaven and earth,... no one knows the Son except the Father, and no one knows the Father except the Son”* (Matthew 11:25-27 ULB) (See also: John 6:26-57 ULB)

Christians have found that “Father” and “Son” are the ideas that most essentially describe the eternal relationship of the First and Second Persons of the Trinity to each other. The Bible indeed refers to them in various ways, but no other terms reflect the kind of eternal love and intimacy between these Persons, nor the interdependent eternal relationship between them.

Jesus referred to God in the following terms:

Baptize them into *the name of the Father, of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit.* (Matthew 28:19 ULB)

The intimate, loving relationship between the Father and the Son is eternal.

no one knows who the Son is except the Father, and no one knows who the Father is except the Son. (Luke 10:22 ULB)

Jesus said, *“Father, glorify your Son so that the Son may glorify you... I glorified you on the earth,... Now Father, glorify me... with the glory that I had with you before the world was created.”* (John 17:1-5 ULB)

The Father *loves* the Son. (John 3:35-36; 5:19-20 ULB)

I *love* the Father, I do what the Father commands me, just as he gave me the commandment. (John 14:31 ULB)

Human fathers and sons are not perfect, but the Bible still uses those terms for the Father and Son, who are perfect.

Just as today, human father-son relationships during Bible times were never as loving or perfect as the relationship between Jesus and his Father. But this does not mean that the translator should avoid the concepts of father and son. The scriptures use these terms to refer to God, the perfect Father and Son, as well as to sinful human fathers and sons. In referring to God as Father and Son, choose words in your language that are widely used and refer to a human “father” and “son.”

Translation Strategies

1. Think through all the possibilities that your language has to translate the words “son” and “father.” Determine which words in your language best represent the divine “Son” and “Father.”
2. If your language has more than one word for “son,” use the word that has the closest meaning to “only son” (or “first son” if necessary).
3. If your language has more than one word for “father,” use the word that has the closest meaning to “birth father,” rather than “adoptive father.”

The following pages will help you with translating “Father” and “Son.”

- [God the Father, heavenly Father, Father](#)
- [Son of God, the Son, Son](#)

How to Translate Names

This answers the question: How can I translate names that are new to my culture?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Translate Unknowns*

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. All names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this *Melchizedek*, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1ULB)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” simply to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” simply to tell us something about Melchizedek.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace. (Hebrews 7:2 ULB)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples from the Bible

You went over the *Jordan* and came to *Jericho*. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the *Amorites* (Joshua 24:11 ULB)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Beerlahairoi*; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the the Living One who sees me.”

She named him *Moses* and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULB)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name *Moses* sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

Saul was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULB)

It came about in Iconium that *Paul* and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULB)

Readers may not know that the names *Saul* and *Paul* refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name all of the time and write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that explains who or what the name refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

- **You went over the *Jordan* and came to *Jericho*. The leaders of *Jericho* fought against you, along with the *Amorites*** (Joshua 24:11 ULB)
 - “You went over the *Jordan River* and came to the city of *Jericho*. The leaders of *Jericho* fought against you, along with *the tribe of the Amorites*”
- **Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because *Herod* wants to kill you.”** (Luke 13:31 ULB)

- “Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because *King Herod* wants to kill you.”

2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

- **She named him *Moses* and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”** (Exodus 2:11 ULB)
 - “She named him *Moses*, which sounds like ‘drawn out,’ and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”

3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name.

- **she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Beerlahairoi*;** (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)
 - “she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Well of the One who sees me*;

4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text talks about that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.

For example, Paul is called “Saul” before Acts 13 and “Paul” after Acts 13. You could translate his name as “Paul” all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

- **a young man named *Saul*** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
 - “a young man named *Paul*”¹ The footnote would look like:
 - ◇ ^[1]Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.

- **But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9 ULB)
 - “But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;”

5. Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that explains who or what the name refers to.

For example, you could write “Saul” where the source text has “Saul” and “Paul” where the source text has “Paul.”

- **a young man named *Saul*** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
 - “a young man named *Saul*”
- **But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9 ULB) *
 “But __Saul__, who is also called __Paul__, was filled with the Holy Spirit;” * **It came about in Iconium that __Paul__ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue**
 ([[en:bible:notes:act:14:01 | Acts 14:1 ULB)

- "It came about in Iconium that *Paul*¹ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue"
(Acts 14:1 ULB) The footnote would look like:
 - ◇ ^[1]This is the man that was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Copy or Borrow Words*

Textual Variants

This answers the question: Why does the ULB have missing or added verses, and should I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Choosing a Source Text*
- *Original Manuscripts*

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. Sometimes the copiers added sentences by mistake or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles have some of these sentences that were added. In the ULB, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, and some mistook a word for another that looked like it. Occasionally they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident, or because they wanted to explain something.

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULB based the ULB on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULB may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULB translators included footnotes that tell about some of the differences between them.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULB and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULB. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

Examples from the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULB has a footnote about verse 11.

¹⁰See that you do not despise any of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. ¹¹[1]

[1] Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11. *For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.*

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULB, but it is marked off with square brackets ([]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

⁵³[Then every man went to his own house.... ¹¹She said, “No one, Lord.” Jesus said, “Neither do I condemn you. Go your way; from now on sin no more.”]^[2]

^[2]The best earliest manuscripts do not have John 7:35-8:11

Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULB or another version that you have access to.

1. Translate the verses that the ULB does and include the footnote that the ULB provides.
2. Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:15-16 ULB, which has a footnote about verse 16.

- ¹⁴He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him.” ¹⁶[¹

- ^[1]Many ancient authorities insert v. 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*

1. Translate the verses that the ULB does and include the footnote that the ULB provides.

- ¹⁴He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him.” ¹⁶[¹

- ^[1]Many ancient authorities insert verse 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*

2. Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

- ¹⁴He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him. ¹⁶If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.” ^[1]

- ^[1]Some ancient authorities do not have verse 16.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Chapter and Verse Numbers*

- *Original Manuscripts*
- *Terms to Know*
- *The Original and Source Languages*

Translate Unknowns

This answers the question: How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Sentences*

How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The translationWords pages and the translationNotes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULB)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread or know what it is.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples from the Bible

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *jackals* (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous *wolves*. (Matthew 7:15 ULB)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *myrrh*. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULB)

People may not know what *myrrh* is and that it was used as a medicine.

to him who made *great lights* (Psalm 136:7ULB)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

your sins ... will be white like *snow* (Isaiah 1:18 ULB)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes the part of the meaning that is important in the particular verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use a phrase that describes the part of the meaning that is important in the particular verse being translated.

- **Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly *ravenous wolves*.** (Matthew 7:15 ULB)
 - "Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but *are truly hungry and dangerous animals*."
- **We have here only five *loaves of bread* and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
 - "We have here only five *loaves of baked grain seeds* and two fish"

2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

- **your sins ... will be white like *snow*** (Isaiah 1:18 ULB) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.
 - "your sins ... will be white like *milk*"
 - "your sins ... will be white like *the moon*"

3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

- **Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *myrrh*. But he refused to drink it.** (Mark 15:23 ULB) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word "medicine."
 - "Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *a medicine called myrrh*. But he refused to drink it."
- **We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).
 - "We have here only five loaves of *baked crushed seed bread* and two fish"

4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.

- **I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *jackals*** (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)
 - "I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *wild dogs*"
- **We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
 - "We have here only five *loaves of baked food* and two fish"

5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

- **to him who made *great lights*** (Psalm 136:7 ULB)
 - "to him who made *the sun and the moon*"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Copy or Borrow Words*
- *How to Translate Names*